

刘国善 总主编

《通用英语语法全程》之五

通用英语

代词、替代词教程

主编 张轶前

广收熔炼提纯的最新资料

满足英语教学的迫切需求

精解英美名家名著例句

针对疑难，穷究深广

nglish

对外经济贸易大学出版社

刘国善总主编《通用英语语法全程》之五

通用英语代词、替 代词教程

主 编 张轶前
副 主 编 徐树娟 田翠芸 王志青
编 者 贾珍霞 单亦桢 曹润宇
 刘国善

《通用英语语法全程》总主编 刘国善
 总 审 王治江

对外经济贸易大学出版社

(京)新登字 182 号

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

通用英语代词、替代词教程/张轶前主编. —北京:对外经济贸易大学出版社, 2004

(通用英语语法全程系列丛书)

ISBN 7-81078-412-9

I. 通... II. 张... III. 英语-代词-教材
IV. H314.2

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2004) 第 132049 号

© 2004 年 对外经济贸易大学出版社出版发行

版权所有 翻印必究

通用英语代词、替代词教程

主 编 张轶前

责任编辑 王 婕

对外经济贸易大学出版社
北京市朝阳区惠新东街 12 号 邮政编码: 100029
网址: <http://www.uibep.com>

唐山市润丰印务有限公司印装 新华书店北京发行所发行
成品尺寸: 140mm×203mm 8.125 印张 211 千字
2005 年 3 月北京第 1 版 2005 年 3 月第 1 次印刷

ISBN 7-81078-412-9/H·076
印数: 0 001—5 000 册 定价: 14.00 元

广收熔炼提纯的最新资料， 满足英语教学的迫切需求 《通用英语语法全程》——六卷总序言

这句话语法上对吗？It's worth doing the work. “做此工作是值得(下工夫)的。”

1965年，H. W. Fowler 在 A Dictionary of Modern English Usage 中说：“错了！”因为句中的 worth 必须带有补语，而 doing ... 不是补语，却是实际的主语，前面的 It 是引导词。

像形容词 like 作表语时要带有补语(原是介词 to 的宾语，to 现已不用)一样，表语形容词 worth 经过历史演变，现也直接用名词或动名词补语。所以上面那句话应改作 It's worth while doing the work.

但是，1975年以来，语法家们一致说 worth 无补语的那种说法是对的：

It's worth (while) trying. (1975, Close)(while 可以略去不用)
“试一试是值得的。”

It's worth making an effort. (1978, LDCE) “作一番努力是值得的。”

Is it worth visiting Leicester? (1980, Swan) It's not worth getting angry with her. (ib)

It's worth (while) saving the cartoons. (1985, CGEL) It's scarcely worth (while) your going home. (ib)

It's worth reading the book. (1989, ALD)

It's worth taking your time when you visit the cathedral. (1995, LDCE) “你们参观那大教堂时，慢慢细看是值得的。”

语法总要随着语言的变化而变化。worth 有时可以不带补语。

这也说明它不(如 RHD, LDCE 等英美词典所讲)属介词性质。

新世纪英语教学与英语使用,迫切需求一部囊括时代语言现象和最新研究成果的多卷本语法,该套语法能解释迄无答案的诸多新发现的问题,例如,读者能否看出以下各对语句的区别何在?

1. That's the early bird that/which caught the worm. 【句法:含定语从句的复合句,先行词是 bird】那只就是抓获虫子的早出之鸟。

It's the early bird that catches the worm. (proverb)【用于特殊强调的分裂句;先行词是 It, 不是 bird】捷足先登。正是早出之鸟,才能抓获虫子。

2. There was a time when man never cooked his food. (RHD)【a time when, 新信息】

What's the time that she normally arrives (at)? (CGEL)【that 通常不指听者未知的新事物】

3. He's a student of Jespersen. (CGEL)【名词关系表达法:of 接名词表“动宾”关系】他是叶斯帕森的研究者。

He was a student of Jespersen's. (CGEL)【of, s' 双重所属形式表“归属”关系】他曾是叶斯帕森的一个学生。

4. Mr. Black is going to leave the bar for the church. (NDEC)【定冠词类指】布莱克先生将脱离律师行业去做牧师。

The bells are ringing for church. (NDEC)【零位冠词概括指,指抽象活动】钟声在响,让人们去做礼拜。

5. There was nothing to do. 【动词不定式单一形式仅指有待完成】没什么要做的事。

There was nothing to be done. 【不定式被动形式加强语气,指可能】什么办法也没有。

6. A homeless defenseless poor little girl... 【形容词顺序:从抽象一般到较具体特殊的性质】

A poor little homeless defenseless girl... 【把 homeless defenseless

看作更特殊的性质】

7. He had taken a kinder view of life in the postwar world. (RHD)

【通常比较级】

There never was a man more kind and just. (RHD)【强调对比差异】

8. He is worse than bad. (CGEL)【同种性质程度上的比较】

He is more good than bad. (CGEL)【突出不同性质间的对比】

9. The book is 3 times as long as that one. (ALD)【规范倍数表达法】

The book is 3 times longer than that one. (ALD)【非规范倍数表达法,与上面例句同义】

10. As you brew, you must drink. One must drink as one brews.

(proverb)【代词 one 比 you 郑重】自作自受。

(He) Who sows the wind shall reap the whirlwind. (proverb)【不用 He, 以 Who 引导的名词从句为主语是古旧说法】挑拨事端的,将自食恶果。

11. Tell me truly what you think. (ALD)【truly 本为方式副词,修饰动词】

She's truly not so nice a hostess. She's not truly so nice a hostess.

【转作语气副词,可修饰句中的不同成份】

12. The man in front of me let me go first. (LLAV)【in front of 表相对静态关系】

There were over one hundred people ahead of us in the queue to get into the cinema. (LLAV)【复合介词 ahead of 表动态关系】

Aren't you before those people in the queue? (ib)【before 在此表顺序】

13. It is very bad of you to leave him. (NDEC)【介词短语 of... 表“出于本心/本性”】

It's very bad for you to smoke. 【for... “对于”,比 of... 表“本心”】

本性适当与否”用途广泛得多】

14. 'He has the welfare of the poor at heart (in his heart). (DAI) I told him what was on my heart. (NDEC)【at..., 位于某点或模糊位置; on..., 位于或压在某面之上】

In her heart of hearts she knew that the evil day could not be long postponed. (Dreiser)【in..., 位于有相当深度的空间之中】

对于语法中的规则似乎没有人问过的“为什么”,如果我们试着问个清楚,会有助于记清和用好有关规则。例如上面第二对例句中的 time when/time that 之分,牵涉到引导定语从句关系代词 which/that 的选择。常用的 all that..., the only thing that... 短语,同样因为 that 含有确指意味。而表“类属”使用关系代词 which,就因为它有不确指含义: John is not the scholar which James is. (RHD)

又如以下各对语句,为什么前面标有 * 的是错误说法,而后面的是正确的?

1. * (When) Making up prescriptions, some tablets have to be divided into four. (RWRT)【句法:无依着修饰语】

Seeing you are ill, the performance will have to be cancelled. (RWRT)【Seeing..., Speaking of..., Considering..., 等属惯用语气状语】

2. * the child of the artist's【名词所有格已包含确指意义,名词短语前不得再使用定冠词】

A child/That (lazy) child of the artist's...【强调不确指的或具有某特性的 child】

3. * the painting of my sister's【要说 the/a painting of my sister, 意即 (the) one representing my sister, of 在此表动宾关系】画了我姐姐的画

A painting of my sister's...【意即 one belonging to or done by my

sister, of 与 's 同用于表所有关系或主谓关系】我姐姐的画(属于她或由她画的)

4. * a growl as frightening as that of a tiger's

A growl as frightening as a tiger's/as frightening as that of a tiger ...

5. * Who cuts my hair has moved to another hairdresser's. 【代词用法:要说 The man/woman who cuts. ...】

Who keeps company with wolves will learn to howl. 【前无代词, He 等或名词, 以 Who(whom)引导的名词从句为主语(宾语)是古旧说法】

6. * Whom I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared. 【要说 The man whom I loved and ...】

The man I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared. Whom Fortune would ruin, she robs of his wits. 命运要毁灭谁, 就先剥夺他的理智。

7. * It is to rain before dark. 【动词形式 is to do 表示人为的安排】

It is going to rain/He is going to be (is to be) back before dark. 【is going to..., 预计】

8. * They caught my napping in class. (应改作 caught me napping) 【分词型复合宾语; catch 不可接用 my napping 动名词短语】

They denied my/me napping in class. 【deny 接用动名词短语/复合结构宾语, 前后二句表明“现在分词”不等于“动名词”】

9. * propose/suggest him to go【不合惯用法】

Advise/recommend him to go【惯用动宾句型】

10. * advice/recommend/suggest to buy a good dictionary【不合惯用法】

advice/recommend/propose/suggest buying a good dictionary... 【惯用】

11. * advice/propose/suggest me a Chinese novel【不合于惯用动宾句型】

What did she advise/recommend you? She recommended me a Chinese novel.【惯用】

ALD(*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*) 以前讲解动宾句型时,列出 25 种 verb pattern,其中很多种又包含更加细分的不同类型,用 VP1A...VP25C 等为标志。后来,较新版本的 ALD 把非表意符号 1A、2B 等换成表意符号 Tt (transitive verb + to infinitive), Cni (complex transitive verb + noun + infinitive), Dnn (double transitive verb + noun + noun) 等。但是罗列的句型还是太多,有三十多种,难以记清。而国内现在还没有其他工具书能够把动宾句型讲述得这么仔细。

又要讲细,又要好记,做得到吗? 做得到! 这就必须区分非疑难句型和疑难句型。我们把非疑难的多种排除在外,只剩下 12 种易混易错的疑难动宾句型,各以区分明确的表意符号代表。12 种中又有 8 种的搭配关系还有一定规律可循,最后只是 4 种最难掌握的句型(见《通用英语动词、动宾句型教程》第 12 章末到 13 章、14 章),我们就此把 300 多个常用动词分门别类,讲明所接宾语类型,可谓全盘而有条理地解决了动词用法的一大难题,比西方独特的 A. S. Hornby 所著的 *A Guide to English Verb Patterns and Usage* 更进了一步。

英语动词有没有一般体? 有人说英语只有进行体和完成体;而我们看到法语、俄语有未完成体对应于完成体,未完成体有其表示进行的形式,实际英语一般体和进行体都属于“未完成”,是完成的对立面。该不该把“将来时”纳入时态系统? will finish 是属词汇手段(类似 be about to finish)还是属“分析形式”的词形变化手段(类似 have finished)? 法语和西班牙语的体、时系统,已用“实意动词+助动词”合成一词的“综合形式”来表示将来时:法语 finirai/finiras 本由分析形式 finir ai/as 缩略而成,原相当于 I/You finish have 或 I/You have

to finish。

英语自古留下的“虚拟语气”体系是否仍然存在？（如德语、法语、西班牙语保存了更完整的虚拟系统。）

北京大学岑麒祥教授在谈印欧语族比较语言学的发展时说：“历史比较语言学解决了许多传统语言学所不能解决的问题…忽视历史发展，就会对现存语法体系的某些现象无法加以适当的估量。”恩格斯批判杜林“伪造的技术语法”说它“一不顾自身已经死亡的形式，二不顾同类活的和死的语言”，“由于缺乏历史的基础而带有自己全部的诡辩性和任意性。”对于现代英语语法许多争议问题，能不能也通过纵向的历史发展与横向的多语种比较，求得解决呢？我们不仅提出了英语历史的演变和同族语言的类比，而且是从动态、辩证的高度对其做出了阐述。

讲解语法时应当把对立统一方法装在心中，用在实处。各种反粒子的发现，也在证实相对论的普遍真理。五四新文化运动先驱张申府先生说：“科学是学，哲学是学之学。”由科学充实了的哲学，回过头来指引着科学。中山大学王宗炎教授评论“转换—生成语法”时说：“由于 Chomsky 的哲学基础不可靠，由于他的研究方向和方法大有问题，很难指望他有什么宝贵贡献或重大突破。”又说：“外国学者的学说，也跟一般引进的东西一样，须得放在各种检查仪之下检查一番。”带头人教给我们的治学之术，应使我们对国外有其价值的新资料，熔炼而提纯，而不是照搬。

以下引自西方论述的三组例句（每四句为一组），是一类用语中两两对应的标本，这种未经着重指明的“相反相成”关系（Extremes meet），我们应强调其实际是所有各方面纵横关联的代表。

It's not the first time he has failed to turn up, is it? (!)(UCEG)

【反义附加问句】(升调或降调)

You have tea at four, don't you? (!) (Alexander)【否定反义附

加问句】(升调或降调)

Oh, that's what you believe, is it? (UCEG)【同义附加问句, 追问】

So you don't like my cooking, don't you? (Swan)【否定同义附加问句, 强势追问】

Have you seen him yet? (CGEL)【通常问句, 用非肯定词语 yet】
你已经见到他了吗?

Haven't you seen him yet? (ib)【否定疑问句, 认为情况应属肯定】
你不是已经见到他了吗?

Have you already seen him? (ib)【肯定意向用语 already 在此表达惊讶】
你这就已见到他了?

Haven't you already seen him? (ib)【否定疑问句中, 认为情况必属肯定】
你不是确实已见到他了吗?

She could/might have gone off with some friends — it was Saturday. 【过去主/客观或然性】

I met her soon after the war. It would/should have been around March 1966. 【过去主/客观倾向性】

You could/might have told me Frances was ill. 【过去主/客观可能性, 未实现, 指本应而未曾告诉我】

The potatoes would/should have been better with a bit more salt. 【过去主/客观倾向性, 未实现】(比较 must have been ..., 过去必然)

又如, the rat/horse 多用于“确指”, a rat/horse 多用于“不确指”(两种所指都属“特指”)。而在 A rat is larger than a mouse. 和 The tractor has replaced the horse. 中, a rat 和 the horse 却是表示以个体或以总体代表的“类指”(“泛指”的一种)。The sun was right above the head. (高于其上) Over our heads hung heavy clouds. (覆盖于上) Parts of Holland are below sea level. (低于其下) The fields are under water after the heavy rain. (覆盖于下)

同属纵横关联的还有语气副词中的四种(同表对客观关系的主观说明)超越:even;局限:only;转折:yet;类同:also 等等。

下列成对范畴的提出,都是辩证观点在英语语法中的体现,有助于全面系统地掌握语言规律:

实词及某些实词的虚化	——虚词及某些虚词的名词/动词化
无限名称词类	——有限名目词类
本体代词	——属性代词
肯定词语及疑问句中的肯定意向	——(疑问/否定/条件句)非肯定词语
动句	——静句
动表(“动词+表语”)	
性复合谓语	——“情态”复合谓语
主谓性复合宾语	——主表性复合宾语
情态动词所表的主观势态	——客观势态(客观可能、倾向、必要)
语句的客观陈述	——所加的主观语气
限制性语气状语	——非限制性语气状语
居动词/表语前位/后位的状语	——外位状语
状语从句所表横向对应关系	——纵向因果关系
顺推条件句	——逆推条件句

我们编写的六卷一套语法教程(分别论述句法、名词与冠词、动词与动宾句型、形容词与数词、代词与替代词、副词介词与连词;各卷书名见封底)力求既不脱离教学语法的合理根基,又在每章每节都萌发出新生枝叶与鲜美果实。这是教学群体几十年实践与科研的汇报。我们热情期待读者和外语专家们给以指点。

为兼顾初阶、中阶、高阶学习人员,全书各章节的深度广度不同。

查阅时宜各取所需。当以其为教材时,教师可有所选择:在公共外语课堂上,可跳过个别片段;而在英语专业课堂上,则可着重讲授较为深广的论述。用作非专业英语语法教材,6本书主干部分可讲两个学期;用作专业教材,全书可于三个学期左右授完。

我们所配练习的特色之一,是精选了名家名著。这些名家有: Andersen (丹麦), Carroll (《艾丽斯漫游奇境记》), Churchill, Dickinson, E. B. Browning, Emerson, Franklin, Gorky (俄罗斯), Grim Brothers (德国), Helen Keller (盲聋作家), Lincoln, Longfellow, Martin Luther King (黑人活动家), O. Henry, Princess Diana (“人民的王妃”黛安娜), Stevenson, Tagore (印度), Thoreau (《瓦尔登湖》作者梭罗), Whitman 等。这不但使空洞的语法条条和典范语言实践结合起来,而且引导读者细致理解最珍奇的诗文。我们不避少量较艰深文字,而是对其加了注释和译文。所以兴趣就蕴含在难度中。

最后,全书总主编要代表各卷主编和全体编者,向关注并支持我们勇挑重担的王晓玲、刘慧君、顾永才、刘传志、刘军教授敬致谢忱;向引导并激励我们奋力开拓的程慕胜、熊德兰、熊德轭、王宗炎教授深表感激。

《通用英语语法全程》总主编
2004 夏于渤海滨、燕山麓、河北理工大学外语园

目 录

第一章 代词与各类静词的关系

- 1.1 英语词类与信号词汇的不同抽象化程度…………… (1)
- 1.2 有限词类的词数很少,用得很多…………… (2)
- 1.3 替代词 so 是形容词、副词的进一步抽象化…………… (3)
- 1.4 替代词 do (so) 是动词的进一步抽象化…………… (3)
- 1.5 代词和替代词可避免语句中的重复…………… (4)
- 1.6 代词所指不明确时可产生歧义…………… (5)
- Exercise 1…………… (6)

第二章 本体代词与属性代词的类别

- 2.1 本体代词有“格”的语法范畴…………… (9)
- 2.2 本体代词多有数,有的有性…………… (10)
- 2.3 大部分本体代词不能用作定语表属性…………… (11)
- 2.4 属性代词按表示“性质”、“数量”、“确定性”
等关系分类…………… (12)
- 2.5 除 every, no 之外,属性代词都可单用而指事物本体…………… (13)
- 2.6 属性代词为前位限定词,不同于形容词…………… (13)
- 2.7 属性代词指本体不尽同于形容词名词化…………… (14)
- Exercise 2…………… (15)

第三章 代词的性、数、格

- 3.1 人称代词性、数、人称及格的呼应…………… (18)

3.2	it 的多种功能	(25)
3.3	人称代词的泛指用法	(31)
3.4	性偏见:用 he/him/his 兼指两性	(33)
3.5	拟人化代词的“性”	(35)
3.6	宾格形式顶替主格形式	(36)
3.7	主格形式顶替宾格形式	(38)
3.8	's 所有格用于指生物的名词与代词	(40)
3.9	's 所有格用于交通工具等	(41)
3.10	's 所有格用于处所、空间量、时间量、 金额及其他度量	(41)
Exercise 3		(44)

第四章 本体代词惯用法

4.1	用作宾语、介词宾语的反身代词	(46)
4.2	用于强调主语的反身代词	(50)
4.3	self/selves 单独使用	(52)
4.4	one 原数词兼任代词	(54)
4.5	one 与 someone/somebody 及 some one	(57)
4.6	anyone/anybody 与 any one	(58)
4.7	no one/nobody 与 none	(59)
4.8	none 指可数或不可数事物	(62)
4.9	none 兼任副词	(64)
4.10	each other 与 one another 的异同	(65)
4.11	分隔开的 each(one)...other (another)	(67)
Exercise 4		(69)

第五章 表空间、时间关系与所属关系的代词

5.1	指示代词指单数和复数	(71)
-----	------------	------

5.2	空间上的远指与近指·····	(72)
5.3	时间上的远指与近指·····	(75)
5.4	语句中的前指与后指·····	(76)
5.5	that 构成的惯用语·····	(79)
5.6	物主代词的附加形式与绝对形式·····	(82)
5.7	强调物主代词 own ·····	(85)
5.8	物主代词/sb's 与 of 短语所表的几种关系 ·····	(87)
5.9	双重所有关系 of sb's/物主代词 mine 等 (my own 等) ·····	(91)
Exercise 5	·····	(93)

第六章 表数量与确定/不确定关系的代词

6.1	many/much 与 a good number/a great deal of, a lot of, plenty of 等 ·····	(97)
6.2	more/most 作代词 ·····	(99)
6.3	much 兼作副词·····	(101)
6.4	more, most 兼作副词 ·····	(104)
6.5	each 与 every 的比较 ·····	(107)
6.6	each 与 everyone/everybody 及 every one 的比较·····	(112)
6.7	such 与 as, that 连用 ·····	(113)
6.8	the same as 与 the same that 之异同 ·····	(115)
6.9	some 指可数与不可数事物 ·····	(116)
6.10	一些非确指代词在句中“数”的呼应·····	(119)
6.11	either, neither, none 在句中“数”的一致 ·····	(121)
6.12	冠词与属性代词的词序·····	(123)
Exercise 6	·····	(124)

第七章 疑问代词/副词,关系代词/ 副词,连接代词/副词

7.1	名词性问题从句与名词性关系从句	(128)
7.2	what 保留或失去疑问意义引导不同的名词从句	(130)
7.3	who 在现代英语中不引导名词性关系从句	(132)
7.4	whatever, whoever 和 which(ever)引导的问题 从句与名词性关系从句	(133)
7.5	which 作关系代词与 that 的比较	(136)
7.6	who 作关系代词与 that 比较	(141)
7.7	关系代词 which 与 whose 的比较	(142)
7.8	关系代词 whose 与 of which 的比较	(144)
7.9	关系代词的省略	(145)
7.10	“介词 + 关系代词”或 that 有时可代替 关系副词 when/where/why	(147)
7.11	关系代词 as 与 which is 比较	(149)
7.12	when, where, how, why 引导问题 从句与关系从句	(151)
Exercise 7	(154)

第八章 否定所指和否定范围

8.1	either(由代词转作否定副词)与 also/too 用于否定句	(157)
8.2	no 与 not 及 not any... 的比较	(158)
8.3	no more... than/not... any more than 与 not more... than	(161)
8.4	neither 由代词转作否定副词与 nor 用作否定连词	(162)

8.5	部分否定	(166)
8.6	局部否定(局限否定)	(168)
8.7	在有“局部否定”的句子中可用肯定词语	(172)
8.8	规范英语和非规范英语中的双重否定	(172)
Exercise 8	(174)

第九章 肯定、非肯定词语和肯定意向

9.1	肯定句中用肯定词语 some 等	(177)
9.2	表疑问/否定/条件等非肯定句中用 非肯定词语 any 等	(178)
9.3	非肯定词语和含蓄否定副词 seldom, hardly, little 等连用	(180)
9.4	非肯定词语代词 any, 其复合代词以及 ever, yet 等用于各种非肯定上下文.....	(181)
9.5	肯定词语、非肯定词语和否定词语的对照.....	(184)
9.6	同一句中用两个以上非肯定词语	(188)
9.7	表示质问或反驳的否定句中 用肯定词语	(188)
9.8	在含“肯定意向”的疑问句和条件句中 用肯定词语	(189)
Exercise 9	(191)

第十章 替代词

10.1	one 作为替代词	(194)
10.2	that, those 作为替代词	(199)
10.3	some, none 等作为替代词	(200)
10.4	the same 作为替代词.....	(203)
10.5	do 作为替代词	(205)

10.6	do so, do it, do that	(207)
10.7	so 替代上文中的表语或定语	(211)
10.8	“so + do(或助动词 / 情态动词) + 主语”与“so + 主语 + do(或助动词 / 情态动词)”	(213)
10.9	so 和 not 替代上述从句	(215)
Exercise 10	(219)
例句出处略语表(主要参考书目).....		(222)
练习题参考答案.....		(228)

第一章 代词与各类静词的关系

1.1 英语词类与信号词汇的不同抽象化程度

语言是一种音义结合的符号系统,每一个词都向人传达一定的含义,或者说一定的信号。英语基本词汇,也可以说是以约定记号表示信息的“信号词汇”,分为实词和虚词两大类。其中实词包括名词、形容词、数词、代词、动词和副词,这五种词类描述事物的静态或动态、事物的属性及静态、动态特征。虚词包括冠词、连词、介词和助动词,这四种词类描述事物静态、动态之间的关系。

列宁说:“任何词(言语)都是在概括。”名词是本体静词,是对事物本身概括化、抽象化的产物。比如,“human”不是指具体某个人或某类人,而是指一切能制造并使用工具从事劳动的高等动物。专有名词也是不同时间、处境中个体之概括。形容词和数词皆属属性静词,是对事物的形状、性质、状态或数量等特征的概括。如“big”是指很多“大”的事物,可用于修饰“potato”,“recorder”,“question”等词的性质;“three”则是指数量为“三”的众多事物的数量特征。

代词则是名词、形容词和数词的进一步抽象,如代词“it”可指“a horse”,“a bird”,“a problem”等;代词“such”可指“good”,“bad”,“big”,“small”等含义;代词“many”可指“ten”,“a hundred”,“a thousand”等众多数目。

动词可分为实义动词、联系动词、情态动词和助动词,其中助动词是动态的最高级抽象,已虚化为只表示“语法意义”(时态、语态关系)的虚词。而情态动词则高度抽象地表示主观认识中运动的趋势,即可能性(can, may)、需求性(will, shall)和必要性(must, need)。

副词是动、静态特征的抽象,如“well”可指“写得好”,“说得好”或“唱得好”等行为的一类特征;“never”可用于表述“从不迟到”,“从不发言”或“从不跑步”等一类行为。

冠词是静态的特高级抽象。它是代词进一步高级抽象化的结果,如this/that, these/those, some, many, few 等都可以概括成“the”。

介词和连词都是表示事物关系的高级抽象词汇,如介词“in”,“on”等表示位置关系;连词“and”表示并列关系;连词“when”表示时间关系,等等。

上述英语基本词汇因属约定俗成的信号可称“信号词汇”。而感叹词和拟声词是感叹声与自然声音的模拟,不属或不全属人为约定性质,可称“模拟词汇”,以区别于“信号词汇”。

1.2 有限词类的词数很少,用得很多

介词、冠词、连词、代词、助动词和情态动词的数量都是有限的,称为有限词类。与其相对的是无限词类——名词、实义动词、形容词和副词,它们的数量难以穷尽。

有限词类(**closed classes/systems**)包括:

介词: in, on, over, about, under, etc.

冠词: a, an, the

连词: and, but, while, that, etc.

代词: he, she, it, they, etc.

助动词: be, have, do, shall, etc.

情态动词: can, may, shall, should, need, etc.

无限词类(**open classes/systems**)包括:

名词: pig, girl, John, computer, etc.

实义动词: speak, jump, strike, adjust, etc.

形容词: beautiful, small, descriptive, etc.

副词: foolishly, apart, soon, etc.

显然,在言语中出现和使用频率最多的不是 man, woman 等无限词类,而是 I, you, she 及 a/an, the 等有限词类。掌握有限词类的用法是学好英语的关键。

1.3 替代词 so 是形容词、副词的进一步抽象化

so(本身可属副词或形容词)可以概括不同形容词或副词的含义。例如:

This is conceivable. At least I find it **so**. (Scheurweghs) (so 替代形容词 conceivable) 这是可以想象的,至少我感觉这样。

Prices at present are reasonably stable, and will probably remain **so**. (CGEL) (so 替代 stable) 价格目前很稳定,并且可能还要保持下去。

Brett's work is not yet consistent in style and quality, but will no doubt become **so**. (CGEL) (so 替代 consistent) 布莱特的作品在风格和质量上还不一致,但将来肯定会一致的。

I got less bashful and you got more **so**. (RHD) (so 替代 bashful) 我的害羞感减弱了,而你的害羞感加强了。

He often behaved prudently, but he did not always behave **so**. (so 替代副词 prudently) 他做事常常是谨慎的,但并不总是如此。

The police searched the big room carefully, but the small room less **so**. (so 替代 carefully) 警察仔细地搜查了大房间,没那么仔细地搜查小房间。

1.4 替代词 do (so) 是动词的进一步抽象化

do (so) 可以概括不同动词所表示的含义。例如:

He was trying to follow her example but could not **do so**. (Priestley) (替代 follow her example) 他正努力跟她学,但没能做到像她那样。

They planned to reach the top of the mountain, but nobody knows if they **did (so)**. (CGEL) (替代 reach the top of the mountain) 他们计划到达山顶,但没人知道他们是否真到了。

The American team will have to think of some new tactics, and probably **doing so** at this very minute. (CGEL) (替代 think of some new tactics) 美国队将不得不考虑一些新战术,大概此时就正在考虑呢。

1.5 代词和替代词可避免语句中的重复

无论在口语还是在书面语中,都可使用代词或替代词来指代或替代前文提到的事物,从而避免不必要的重复。例如:

I hear he killed himself last night. Have you heard anything about **it**? (RHD) (指代“he killed himself last night”)我听说他昨晚自杀了,就此你听说什么了吗?

After many weeks of rain, the dam burst. Millions of gallons of water plunged into the valley, and villages were swept away in the flood. In a short time, thousands of square miles of low-lying ground were covered with water. **This** was a disaster on a scale which no one had foreseen. **It** led to loss of life, and widespread damage to livestock and crops. (CGEL) (this 指代它前面所述事实, it 指代前面提到的 disaster) 大雨下了好几个星期,大坝崩溃了。汪洋似的大水冲入山谷,村庄在洪水中被卷走了。不久,数千平方英里的低地尽是洪水。这场灾难规模之大,无人料及。它使人丢掉生命,使家畜和庄稼遭到大

范围的损害。

My shoes are similar to the **ones** you had on yesterday. (URW)
(ones 替代 shoes) 我的鞋和你昨天穿的相似。

Martin wants to write, but he's afraid to say **so**. (London) (替代
“Martin wants to write.”) 马丁想写作,但不敢说出来。

1.6 代词所指不明确时可产生歧义

代词指代不明确时,会使句子语义含混。例如:

Susan said to Mary that **she** was a beautiful girl. 苏珊对玛丽说她
是个漂亮女孩儿。

本句中, she 所指不明确,既可指 Susan 也可指 Mary, 还可指两个谈话人之外的第三者,所以可能具有以下三种含义:

Susan said to Mary that **Susan** was a beautiful girl.

Susan said to Mary that **Mary** was a beautiful girl.

Susan said to Mary that **Jane** was a beautiful girl.

再如:

When Betty met Sue, **she** was a student at Stanford. 当贝蒂见到
苏时,她还是斯坦福大学的学生。(she 既可指 Betty 也可指
Sue, 还可指两个谈话人之外的第三者)

When Tom offered Jack a handkerchief, **he** kicked **him**. 汤姆给
杰克手帕时,他踢了他。(he 指汤姆时, him 指杰克; he 指杰
克时, him 指汤姆)

Darcy next insisted to Mr. Gardener that **he** bear all the expenses
himself. 达西又向加德纳先生坚持他担负一切费用。(he/
himself 既可指达西又可指加德纳)

因而,在使用代词时,要求上下文有其明确所指。

Exercise 1

I. 指出下列一段话中序号前的词语是有限词类,还是无限词类,各是什么词性:

Her(1) husband, among(2) various physical accomplishments, had(3) been one of the most powerful(4) ends(橄榄球边锋)that(5) ever played football(在此指橄榄球)at New Haven — a national figure in a way, one of those men who reach such an acute limited excellence at twenty-one that everything afterward(6) savors(意味着) of anticlimax(高潮后的衰退). His family were enormously wealthy — even in college his freedom with money was a(7) matter for reproach(8) — but(9) now he'd left Chicago and come East in a fashion that(10) rather took your breath away; for instance, ! he'd brought down a string of polo(马球赛用的)ponies(比赛马)from Lake Forest. It(11) was hard to realize(12)that a man in my own generation was wealthy enough to do that(13).

II. 说明标有序号的词属于哪种代词(人称代词、物主代词、指示代词、疑问代词、关系代词、连接代词、概括代词、不定代词、区别代词、指量代词等),它们各担任什么句中成分(关系代词与连接代词担任哪种从句中的什么成分);但注意有个别代词已经虚化为连词,不担任句中成分,然而要指出它所引导的从句类别:

I(1)(英国王储查尔斯的王妃黛安娜, Princess Diana, who died in an accident on Aug. 31, 1997) had always wanted to hug people in hospital beds. A visit to an AIDS hospice(探望艾滋病医院) in 1991, with Mrs. Bush, was a stepping stone(上进的台

阶) for me(2). This particular man, who(3) was so ill, started crying when I sat on his bed, and he held my hand. And I thought “Diana, do it(4), do it,” and I gave him an enormous hug. It was just so touching that(5) he clung to me and he cried.

On the other(6) side of the room, a very young man, who I can only describe as beautiful, lying in his bed, told me he was to die about Christmas. His friend, a man sitting in a chair by the bed, was crying his(7) eyes out(痛哭流涕). “Why not me(8)?” he said. I put my hand out to him(9) and said: “It’s not supposed to be easy, all(10) this. Isn’t it extraordinary — wherever I go, it (11) is always those(12) like you, sitting in a chair, who have to go through such hell, whereas those(13) who accept (the fact that) they are going to die are calm. (这不是很奇怪吗——无论我走到哪里,必须经受地狱般痛苦折磨的,总是像你这样坐在椅子上的一些人,而那些接受临近死亡的命运的人却已是平静的。) You’ll learn so much(14) from watching your friend.” He was crying and clung to my(15) hand, and I just hate being taken away. (他一直在哭,抓着我的手;有人带我离开时,我很不想走。)

When I go into the palace for a garden party or summit meeting dinner(最高级会晤间的宴会), I am another one(16), a very different person. I conform what(17) is expected of me. (那时我是在顺应那个社会对我的期望。) But on days when I come to the hospice, I know on turning my light off at night that(18) I’m doing my best. (但在我访问危重病人医院的日子,晚上熄灯时我心知,我尽了我的努力。)

Ⅲ. 使用代词, 改写句子, 避免名词的重复:

1. Jack has a part-time job. Jack works at a fast-food restaurant.

2. Many monkeys don't like water. Many monkeys can swim well when they have to.
3. The teacher marked the students' papers late into the night. The teacher returned the students' papers to them the next day.
4. The cormorant(鸬鹚) is a diving bird. The bird can stay under water for a long time.
5. Jane bought a new book. Jane read the book the whole afternoon.
6. My family is large. My family is composed of 10 members.

IV. 使用 do (so)/so 改写句子,避免动词或形容词的重复:

1. "May I come round in the morning?" "Yes, please come."
2. "Do you smoke?" "Yes, I smoke."
3. My secretary worked later than I worked last night.
4. She was ill, but he didn't seem ill.
5. He is a lazy boy and will always be lazy.
6. He was trying to follow her example. But he couldn't follow her example.

第二章 本体代词与属性代词的类别

2.1 本体代词有“格”的语法范畴

代词首先区分为指称事物本身的本体代词和指称事物属性的属性代词(2.4)两大类。

本体代词中,人称代词、疑问代词有主格、所有格、宾格之别;其他本体代词也大都有所有格形式。

人称代词:

He gave **us** some apples. (he 为主格, us 为宾格)他给了我们一些苹果。

I saw **him** in the room. (I 为主格, him 为宾格)我见他在房里。

The most savage beasts never attack **their** own kind. (their 为所有格)最凶猛的野兽也决不攻击它们的同类。

不定人称代词:

One's love affairs are **one's** own business. (所有格)爱谁是一个人的事。

Everybody's business is **nobody's** business. (谚)人人管等于没人管。

I've taken **somebody else's** hat. 我拿了别人的帽子。

区别代词:

She thinks only of **others'** good. 她只为别人的利益着想。

I don't like your pictures. I'll go to buy **another's**. 我不喜欢你的画,我要去买另一个人的。

相互代词:

They looked into **each other's** eyes for a silent moment. 他们四目相视,一时相对无言。

否定代词:

Everybody's friend is **nobody's** friend. (谚)人对谁都友好,没人对他友好。

2.2 本体代词多有数,有的有性

很多本体代词具有“数”的概念,即“单数”或“复数”:

Which is your favorite composer? (指单数) 哪位是你最喜爱的作曲家?

Which are your favorite novelists? (指复数) 哪些是你最喜爱的小说家?

I can see **what** appears to be a ship. (指单数) 我能看到那个看上去像船一样的东西。

We can see **what** appear to be camels. (指复数) 我们能看见看上去像骆驼一样的一些东西。

指代不可数事物的 much, (a) little 等没有数的意义(即无单、复数意义)。比较:

Give me **a little** (of that wine). 把那酒给我一点儿。

Give me **a few** (of those apples). (指复数) 把那些苹果给我几个。

Most of his writing is rubbish. 他写的大部分内容都是垃圾。

Most (of the people) were saved. 那些人大多数得救了。

人称代词除了有“数”的差别,第三人称代词还有“性”的差别,即阴性、阳性、中性:

A girl came in. **She** was about 15. (阴性) 一个女孩儿进来,她大约 15 岁。

He is the man to whom I gave the money. (阳性) 他就是我给他钱的那个男人。

Loyalty must be earned. It can't be bought. (中性) 忠诚必须靠赢得,它是买不来的。

由疑问代词转来的关系代词,如果指人可有“性”的意义,指事物时一般没有性别之分:

The most unhappy of all men is the one **who** thinks he is so. (指人) 所有人中最不幸福的人是自认为不幸福的人。

She had an old black cat **who** generally lay coiled. (指人格化的动物) 她有一只老黑猫,这只猫通常蜷缩起来卧着。

He arrived in a new car **which** he planned to give to Billy. (指事物) 他乘着一辆新车到了,这辆车他打算送给比利。

John is a soldier, **which** I should also like to be. (指事物:职业) 约翰是个军人,我也想当个军人。

2.3 大部分本体代词不能用作定语表属性

大部分本体代词如 who, I, self, none 等不能够用作定语,来表事物属性。但人称代词主格 she 和 he 却可以和名词构成复合词来表示性别。例如:

表示动物: a she-goat 一只母山羊 a he-goat 一只公山羊

a she-wolf 一只母狼 a he-wolf 一只公狼

表示人: one's she-cousin 一个人的堂姐(妹)

one's he-cousin 一个人的堂兄(弟)

a she-dancer 一名女舞者

a he-dancer 一名男舞者

表其他事物: a she-monster 一个女怪物

a he-monster 一个男怪物

she-poetry 女性诗歌
he-literature 男性文学
a she-school 女子学校

2.4 属性代词按表示“性质”、“数量”、“确定性”等关系分类

属性代词可分为表性质的属性代词,表数量的属性代词,表确定/不确定性的属性代词,表否定存在的属性代词和表疑问的属性代词。

1) 表性质的属性代词——包括指示代词(表示自在空间/时间)和物主代词的附加形式(表示外在所属关系):

I want **this** car, not **that** car. 我想要的是这辆车,而不是那辆车。

These days are cold. 这些天很冷。

His hat is the brown one. 他的帽子是棕色的那个。

2) 表数量的属性代词——包括指量代词 many/much, (a) few/little (表示自身数量)和次序代词 the next, the last 等(表示外在次序):

I wonder if **many** people will be at the party. 我不知道是否有很多人要来参加聚会。

Few words are best. (谚) 少说为佳。

He was **the last** person to leave. 他是最后一个离开的人。

3) 表示“质或量”的确定性/不确定性代词——包括确定代词(such, the same)、个别代词(one, either, each, every)、区别代词(other, another)、不定代词(some, any, 及其构成的复合代词 somebody 等)和概括代词(all, both):

There's no **such** thing as ghosts. (不说 * no such a...) 没有鬼

这种东西。

You may go by **either** road. (两条路) 你走哪条路去都行。

Give me **another** pair of shoes. 给我另一双鞋。

All things are difficult before they're easy. (谚) 任何事情都是先难而后易。

2.5 除 **every**, **no** 之外, 属性代词都可单用而指事物本体

属性代词大都可单用而指事物本体, 例如:

If I miss the next train, I'll catch **the next** after that. (LDCE) 如果我赶不上下班火车, 我就赶再后面的那班火车。

It's hard to please **all** (people). (谚) 很难使所有人都满意。(众口难调。)

Such was the situation we were facing. 这就是我们当时面临的形势。

但 **every** 和 **no** 却不能单用而指事物本体, 必须与名词或代词连用:

There are 30 students in our class. **Every student/one** has a dictionary. (不说 * Every has a dictionary.) 我们班有 30 个学生, 每人都有一部词典。

“Who is in the office?” “谁在办公室?”

“There's **no one/nobody**.” (不说 * There's no.) “没人。”

No news is good news. (谚) 没有消息即是好消息。

2.6 属性代词为前位限定词, 不同于形容词

有些属性代词与冠词或数词连用时, 要放在它们前面。这一点是与形容词不同的。比较:

Many a pop star has been ruined by drugs. (不说 * A many...)
很多流行音乐的歌星因吸毒而毁了自己。

A famous pop star has just come from New York. (不说 * Famous a pop...)
一位著名的流行音乐歌星刚从纽约到来。

The next six months will be the hardest. (不说 * the six next...)
接下来的六个月将是最艰难的日子。

Those six hardest months have passed. (不说 * six those hardest...)
那最艰难的六个月已经过去了。

He hasn't had anything to eat for **the last 12 hours**. (不说 * the 12 last...)
最后 12 个小时他什么也没吃。

Those 12 little men left yesterday. (不说 * Twelve those little...)
12 个小矮人儿昨天离开了。

2.7 属性代词指本体不尽同于形容词名词化

形容词指实体与定冠词 the 连用,常指一类人或事物:

The rich get richer and **the poor** get poorer. 富人越来越富,穷人越来越穷。

Fortune favors **the brave**. (谚) 勇士得好运之青睐。

He thought that the aim of philosophy was to discover **the good**, **the beautiful** and **the true**. 他认为哲学旨在发现真、善、美。

在特定上下文中,“the + 形容词”也可指特定个体:

When **the old** saw the trees laden with fruit, he nodded, smiled with self-satisfaction. 那老人看到树上挂满果子时,满意地点头微笑。

但属性代词指本体时,并不一定带有定冠词 the。这里以 few 为例:

Few of those roses are worth buying. (ALD) 那些玫瑰花没有几

朵是值得买的。

Some books are to be tasted, **others** to be swallowed, and some **few** to be chewed and digested. (Bacon) 一些书只需浅尝, 一些书需要囫圇吞枣, 还有少量一些书需要咀嚼消化。

Winter has not many warm days, only **a few**. (Thorndike) 冬季没有多少暖和日子, 仅有几天。

The few who came to the concert enjoyed it. (ALD) 来听音乐会的人虽不多, 他们却都很欣赏它。

Exercise 2

- I. 指出下列一段话中标号前的词语是属性代词, 还是本体代词。若是属性代词, 指出其类别(“性质”、“数量”或“确定性”); 若是本体代词, 指出其单、复数:

Only Gatsby, the man who (1) gives his (2) name to this (3) book, was exempt(被排除) from my reaction — Gatsby, who represented everything (4) for which (5) I have an unaffected scorn. If personality is an unbroken series of successful gestures, then there was something gorgeous about him (6), some heightened sensitivity to the promises of life(对生活种种期望的高度敏感), as if he (7) were related to one (8) of those (9) intricate(复杂的) machines that (10) register earthquakes ten thousand miles away.

This (11) responsiveness(敏锐感受力) had nothing to do with that (12) flabby(软弱无力的) impressionability(易感性) which (13) is dignified under the name of the “creative temperament(气质)” — it was an extraordinary gift for hope, a romantic readiness(浪漫主义的闻风而动) such (14) as I (15) have never

found in any (16) other (17) person and which it is not likely I shall ever find again.

- II. 说明下面一段文字中标有序号的代词的性质与功能,即作为本体代词、还是属性代词? 属于人称代词、物主代词、指示代词、不定代词、疑问代词、关系代词、或者是代词虚化而来的连词? 担任句中什么成分或者引导什么从句或其他结构? 另外说明,两个代词加名词的名词性词组 *Each day (that I escape death/of suffering ...)* 和 *This way (I look at ...)* 在句中担任什么成分:

“Why did they (1) commit suicide?”

“It (2) is humiliating to survive in this (3) city. If you (4) bear any visible scars of atomic burns, your (5) children will encounter prejudice on the part of those (6) who (7) do not. No (8) one (9) will marry the daughter or the niece of an atomic bomb victim. People are afraid of genetic damage from the radiation.”

The old fisherman gazed at me (10) politely and with interest. Hanging over the patient was a big ball made of bits of brightly colored paper, folded into the shape of tiny birds.

“What (11) is that (12)?” I (13) asked.

“Those (14) are my (15) lucky birds. Each (16) day that I escape death, each day (词组 *each day*, 17) of suffering that (18) helps to free me (19) from earthly cares, I (20) make a new little paper bird, and add it (21) to the others (22). This (23) way (词组 *This way*, 24) I (25) look at them (26) and congratulate myself (27) on the good fortune that (28) my illness has brought me (29). Because thanks to it (30), I (31) have the opportunity to improve my (32) character.”

Once again, outside in the open air, I (33) tore into little pieces a small notebook with questions that (34) I (35) had prepared in advance for interviews with the patients of the atomic ward. Among them (36) was the question: Do you (37) really think that (38) Hiroshima is the liveliest city in Japan? I never asked it (39). But I (40) could read the answer in every (41) eye.

(Jacques Danvoir, *Hiroshima — the “Liveliest” City in Japan*)

III. 改正下列句子中的错误:

1. After tasting the soup, Smith added a few salt to it.
2. Let me give you little advice. You can borrow money from the bank.
3. Most of her arguments was founded on fact.
4. As I was just getting familiar with this job, I had many to ask my boss.
5. Some of the capital cities I would like to visit is London and Paris.
6. How are everything, Martin?
7. He had never envied the riches their luxurious pleasures.

IV. 连词成句。注意限定词的顺序:

1. his, both, are, still, parents, alive
2. the, half, not, ripe, are, apples
3. few, days, there, to be, seemed, another, every, setback
4. John, a, makes, noise, quite
5. mistakes, no one, the, be blamed, can, many, for

第三章 代词的性、数、格

3.1 人称代词性、数、人称及格的呼应

人称代词具有“性”(限于第三人称)、“数”、“人称”及“格”等几方面的特征,使用时要做到几方面的呼应。

1) 在“性”上,阳性代词对应阳性名词/代词;阴性代词对应阴性名词/代词;中性代词对应中性名词/代词。例如:

阴性:

My sister's very strong — **she** can swim 5 miles. (ALD) 我姐姐很强壮,能游五英里。

Ask Jennifer if **she'll** be home in time for dinner. (Alexander) 问问珍妮弗,看她是否准时回家吃饭。

阳性:

John's broken his leg. He'll be in hospital for two weeks. (Swan) 约翰摔断了腿,他要住院两周。

Man is a hunter, woman is **his** game. (Tennyson) 男人是猎人,女人是猎物。

中性:

The sky is not less blue because the blind man does not see **it**. (谚) 瞎子看不见,蓝天照样蓝。

Love ceases to be a pleasure when **it** ceases to be a secret. (Close) 爱情公开之时就不再是快乐。

Livia had just been delivered of twin boys; of **which**, by the way, Sejanus seems to have been the father. 莉维雅刚生了一对双

胞胎男孩,说起来,色占纳好像是孩子的父亲。(婴儿常被当作中性的事物看待)

有时为了强调男性或女性或者根据特定结构的需要,采用“he or she”,“his or her”等结构(另参照 3.4“性偏见”):

A weekend guest usually takes a gift to express **his or her** thanks.

在别人家度过周末的人,通常带上一件礼物以表示感谢。

Ask your brother or sister to let you borrow some article of new clothing. **He or she** is somewhat reluctant to lend it to you. . .

让你哥哥或姐姐允许你借件新衣服,他或她有点不愿意给。

(老师在规定角色扮演的情景)

2) 在“数”上,一般是单数代词对应单数名词/代词,复数代词对应复数名词/代词:

My wife says **she** wants to do some shopping. (RHD) 我妻子说她想去买些东西。

Everything has now been said, hasn't **it**? (Swan) 一切都说过了,对吗?

Each (one)/Every one of the students should have **his (or her)**/their own books. (GCE) 这些学生每人都有自己的书。(their 不如 his or her 正式)

Our curtains look dirty. **They** need a good wash. (Alexander) 我们的窗帘看上去脏了,需要好好洗一洗。

A stone is heavy and sand weighty, but a fool's wrath is heavier than **them** both. (圣经) 石头重,沙土沉;但愚人的恼怒比这两样都更沉重。

and 连接的并列结构既可表示单数意义也可以表示复数意义,要根据不同情况而选用单数或复数代词:

My friend and roommate has agreed to lend me **his** car. (指一个人)我的朋友,也是我的室友,同意把他的汽车借我用。

My friend and my roommate have agreed to lend me **their** car. (两个人)我的朋友和我的室友都同意把他们的汽车借我用。

The singer and composer left **his** briefcase in the hotel. 那位歌唱家兼作曲家把手提箱落在了旅馆里。

The singer and the composer left **their** briefcases in the hotel. 那位歌唱家和那位作曲家都把他们的手提箱落在了旅馆里。

and连接的并列结构前有 every/each 修饰时,与之对应的代词一般用阳性单数:

Every boy and girl must have **his** hair neatly combed. 男孩和女孩都要把头发梳理整洁。

Every man and woman has **his** own rights. 每个男人及每个女人都有自己的权利。

Each dog and each cat has **its** own food. 猫狗各有自己的食物。

很正式语体中,可使用“his or her”;非正式语体中可使用复数代词:

Every boy and girl must have **his or her** hair neatly combed.

由 or, (n)either... (n)or 等连接的并列结构,与之相对应的代词一般按“就近原则”与靠近谓语动词的名词/代词保持数(或性)的一致:

No visitor or *relative* can enter the patient's room unless **he** is invited by the doctor. 除非应医生之邀,拜访者或亲属都不得进入病房。

Neither Dr. Smith nor *his assistants* were careful with **their** work. 史密斯大夫或他的助手们对工作都不认真。

非正式语体中,也有时使用阳性单数代词或复数代词:

Either he or she is going to change **his/their** attitude. (CGEL)
或者是他或者是她,总得有一个要改变态度。

与集合名词相呼应的代词,要根据其单、复数含义而选用相应的

单数或复数形式。当作整体看待时,集合名词应是单数含义;强调个体成员时,集合名词应是复数含义。比较下面例句 a 和 b:

- a. The majority is always able to impose **its** will on the minority. (Wood) 多数人总是能将其意志强加于少数人。
- b. The majority of doctors hold **their** belief firmly that smoking is harmful to health. 多数医生坚信吸烟对健康有害。
- a. My family is large. **It** consists of ten members. 我家是个大家庭,有十口人。
- b. My family are loving and supportive. **They** are loved by their neighbors. 我的家人慈爱助人,他们受到邻居的爱戴。
- a. The committee has not yet decided how **it** should react to the governor's letter. (CGEL) 委员会还没决定他们对州长的信函应做出如何的反应。(强调对书信做出代表整个委员会的反应)
- b. The Committee of Public Safety quarrel as to who **its** next chairman should be. (Partridge) 公共安全委员会就谁当下一届主席而争吵。

each 在句中的位置决定与其连用的代词是单数还是复数。当 each 位于动词之前时,其后的代词用复数;each 位于动词之后时,其后代词用单数:

They each are accountable for **their** own work. 他们每个人都为自己的工作负责。

They are each responsible for **his** own work. (译文同上)

有时代词与它限定的名词在数的形式上是不一致的(而和句首的 It 一致):

They can't put **their** finger on what's wrong. (CGEL) 他们不能指出症结之所在。(不用 fingers; put + one's finger on 为惯用语)

The students raised **their hand**. 学生举起手。(强调每人只举一只手;若用 hands,可能每人只举一只手,但也不排除每人举两只手的可能)

Students were asked to name **their favorite sport**. 要求学生指出他们最喜爱的运动。(只说出一种运动即可;若用 sports 则表示要至少说两种)

Their married life was happy. 他们的婚姻生活很幸福。(一对夫妻共同的生活)

Their married lives were happy. 他们各自的婚姻生活很幸福。(多对夫妻的婚姻生活)

下面“*It is ... who*”分裂句中,谓语动词的数和前面的人称代词是不一致的(而和句首 *It* 一致):

It is *me* who's to blame. (CGEL) 是我应受到责怪。(比较似乎更正式的说法: *It is I who am to blame.*)

It is *you* who's to blame. (CGEL) 是你应受到责怪。(you 指单数)

3) 在人称上,要保持前后的一致关系:

John didn't find us in, so **he** left a message. (Alexander) 约翰发现我们不在家,所以留下了个便条。(第三人称)

I have a car of **my** own. 我有自己的汽车。(第一人称)

You should take good care of **yourself**. 你应当自己照管好自己。(第二人称)

当代词所指对象是 and 连接的不同人称的名词短语时,代词的选择本着如下原则:第一人称作于第二人称,第二人称优于第三人称:

Freda and I have finished our work. Can **we** start lunch now?
(CGEL) 我和雷德做完了工作。现在我们可以吃午饭了吗?
(3 + 1 → 1)

You and John can stop your work now, if **you** like. (ib) 如果你

们愿意,你和约翰现在可以停止工作。(2+3→2)

If you, Mary and I have already finished, **we** can have lunch. 如果你、玛丽和我都做完了,我们可以吃午饭。(2+3+1→1)

人称代词或名词并列的顺序一般是第二人称→第三人称→第一人称(上面例句中就依此序),但有时也有一定的变化,如:

On many occasions, **I and many** other foreigners have been followed through the streets by students eager to practise their English. (第三人称的短语较长,故放在第一人称后。)

I and Mary are to blame. 我和玛丽要受到责怪。(谈到接受责怪惩罚等情况时,第一人称常常放在前面。)

人称代词一般出现在所指名词之后(前指)如 John..., he..., 但也有时出现在名词之前(后指),这种结构常见于从句中:

As **he** was drinking at the spring, the hunter saw a huge lion. (Close) 猎人在喝泉水时,看见一头大狮子。

Her aunt having left the room, I asked Ann for some personal help. (CGEL) 安的姑母离开了房间,我让安来帮助我。

一般说来,后指可以转换成前指,如上面两句可分别改写成 As the hunter..., he... 和 Ann's aunt..., ...her..., 但并非总是可以改写,例如:

Mary bought a new dress, but **she** didn't like it. 玛丽买了一件新衣服,但她不喜欢。

She bought a new dress, but Mary didn't like it. 她买了一件衣服,但玛丽不喜欢它。(She 和 Mary 指不同的人)

4) 在“格”这方面,作主语一般用主格,作宾语或介词宾语一般用宾格,表所有一般用所有格:

He turned traitor and fought against the king. 他一变而为叛徒,对抗国王。

Most of **us** know that conductors direct their orchestras with a

button. 我们大多数人都知道指挥者用指挥棒指挥他们的交响乐队。

Mr. Harry spoke harshly to both of **us**, Walter and me. 哈利先生严厉地训斥了我们俩——我和怀特。

All but **him and me** are going to the art exhibition. 除了他和我, 大家都要去看艺术展览。(but/except 后也有时用主格, 见 3.8)

注意下面的语法结构中, 是选用宾格还是所有格:

i) “逻辑主语(指人)+动名词”结构作宾语时, 逻辑主语一般用所有格; 非正式语体中也用宾格:

I don't mind **your/you** saying that. (Close) 我不介意你说了那样的话。

I don't approve of **your/you** staying out late. (ib) 我不赞成你在外呆得时间过晚。

若该结构是作动词 defer, deny, delay, postpone, enjoy, risk 等的宾语时, 逻辑主语通常只用所有格:

He doesn't deny **his** breaking the agreement. 他不否认自己违约。

I don't think the children enjoy **your/his/John's** teasing.

(Alexander) 我认为孩子们不喜欢你的/他的/约翰的逗弄。

若该结构的逻辑主语和句子主语相同, 也只用所有格代词(或省略):

I remember (**my**) saying that. (Close) 我记得说过那样的话。

若该结构作主语, 逻辑主语通常也只用所有格代词:

It's no use **your** telling me not to worry. 你告诉我别担忧, 但这么说没有用。

ii) 复合宾语(宾语+补语)要和上述“动名词复合结构”区分开来。在复合宾语结构中, 代词要用宾格, 不能用所有格:

I'd better not catch **you** doing that again. (Alexander) 我最好别再发现你做那样的事。

I watched **them** climbing/climb the tower. (CGEL) 我看着他们往塔上爬/爬上塔顶。

He told **me** to run. (Alexander) 他让我快跑。

其他有关格的问题,见 3.6“宾格形式顶替主格形式”和 3.7“主格形式顶替宾格形式”。

5) 在人称代词的使用中,还应注意易犯的随意省略或随意增添代词的错误,一定要避免后面括号中的病句:

i) 避免随意省略的错误:

They arrested him and **put him in prison**. 他们把他逮捕并投入了监狱。(不说 * They arrested him and **put in prison**.)

“Have some chocolate.” “No, I don't **like it**.” “吃点巧克力。”
“我不爱吃。”(不说 * I don't like.)

但独立结构中,代词有时省略:

The manager sat quietly in the office, (**his**) eyes closed. 经理闭着双眼,静静地在办公室里坐着。

ii) 避免随意添加的错误:

My car is parked outside. 我的汽车在外面停着。(不说 * **My car it** is parked outside.)

The situation is terrible. 情况很糟。(不说 * **It is terrible the situation**.)

We should consider both of the plans. 这两个计划我们都应考虑。(不说 * **The plans we should consider both of them**.)

3.2 it 的多种功能

1) 指事物或人

i) it 可以指代单数的中性名词和表事物的不定代词 (everything, anything, something, nothing):

There are as good fish in the sea as ever came out of **it**. (谚) 海里的鱼是取之不尽的。(失去一个机会,不愁没有其他机会。)

You can not eat your cake and have **it**. (谚) 凡事不能两全。

Nothing happened, did **it**? (Swan) 什么都没发生,是不是?

Everything has now been said, hasn't **it**? (Swan) 一切都说过了,对吗?

ii) it 还可指代被当作事物看待的性别不明确(或对其性别不感兴趣)的动物或婴儿。(指动物也可用阳性或阴性代词,见 3.5“拟人化代词”):

A bird may be known by **its** sound. (谚) 闻声知鸟。

As I came up to her little baby, **it** stretched out its little arms to me. (RHD) 当我走近她的小宝贝时,它朝我伸出了小胳膊。

iii) it 也可指代被当作一个事物整体看待的集合名词:

His family is a large one. **It** consists of himself and his wife and sons and three maids. (RHD) 他有个大家庭,包括他自己、妻子、儿子们和三个女佣。

iv) it 还可指人,表某人身份或情况:

“Who's that?” “**It's** John.” (Swan) “谁呀?”“约翰。”

The landlord! Here **it** comes. (RHD) 是房东啊! 他来了。

She was a rich woman/rich and she looked **it**. (CGEL) 她是个贵妇人,并且看上去也像。

v) it 在指事物或人时,从句子形式上看,多用于前指,指前面提到的词语,从句或独立的句子:

“What do you think of the play?” “I like **it**.” (Swan) “你认为这个剧怎么样?”“我爱看。”(不说 * I like.)

She made some soup and gave **it** to the children. (CGEL) 她做了

些汤,端给孩子们。(指不可数名词短语)

A tall man stood up and shook hands. It was Captain Cawrie.

(Swan) 一个高个男人站起来和主人握手,他是考瑞上尉。

(指单数可数名词短语)

You're much stronger now, though you may not look it. 你强壮多了,尽管你可能看上去不像。(指形容词短语)

"Who said that I was crazy?" "I said it." (CGEL) "谁说我疯了?" "我说的。"(指 that 从句)

"Do you like sitting in the sun?" "Yes, I thoroughly enjoy it." (Close) "你喜欢晒太阳吗?" "极其喜欢。"(指动名词短语)

Tom and Mary are engaged. Who would have thought of it?

(Close) 汤姆和玛丽订婚了。谁会想到呢?(指整个句子)

it 指代前面整个句子时,不能与 I know, I remember, I forget, I think, I believe, I expect 等连用:

"It's late." "I know." (Swan) "晚了。" "我知道。"(不说 * I know it.)

"You won't forget to write, will you?" "No, I won't forget." "你不会忘记写吧?" "不会。"(不说 * I won't forget it.)

上面的答句说成 * ... know it 和 * ... forget it 就错了,但 think, believe 等可和 so 连用,如: "Will George pass his examination?" "I think so."

it 用于前指较普遍,有时也可用于后指(指代后面出现的事物),如:

It's a nuisance, this delay. 太讨厌了,这么耽搁下去。

Since you don't like it, you don't have to go skiing. (RHD) 既然你不喜欢,就不必去滑雪了。

Why don't appreciate it when people are nice to you? 大家对你好,你怎么不领情呢?

It will be a pity if we ask her to leave. 如果我们让她离开,那将很遗憾。

2) it 用作引导词

i) 用作形式主语

替代不定式

句子表语常为形容词 important, difficult, easy, vital, necessary 或名词 a pleasure, a pity, a shame, a mystery 等词语:

It's important to reconsider this rule. (Close) 要重新考虑这条规则,这是重要的。

It's easy (for me) to make mistakes. (Alexander) (对我来说) 犯错误很容易。

It's a pleasure (for us) to be here. (Alexander) (我们) 很高兴来这儿。

替代动名词

表语一般限于 fun, worth, worthwhile, senseless, no use/no good/no help, a nuisance, a waste 等词语:

It's not much fun going to a party alone. (ALD) 独自去参加聚会没意思。

Is it worth reserving a seat? (Swan) 预订座位值得吗?

It's no use John's saying anything/for John to say anything. (RHD) 约翰说什么也没用。

I don't suppose it's any good waiting for her. (RHD) 我认为等她没有用。

替代名词从句

It is a complete mystery what caused the accident. (Close) 事故是由什么引起的,这完全是个谜。

It makes no difference whether it rains or not. 下不下雨,无关紧要。

以上两例都可不用 *it* 而把从句放在句首,如: *What caused the accident is a complete mystery.* 但下面 *It's said that*, *It appears that*, *It's likely that* 等句型中, *that* 从句不能放在句首。这类句型中常用的动词 (*be*) *said/thought/believed*, *seem*, *look*, *appear*, *happen* 等; 常用表语形容词 (*be*) *likely*, *unlikely*, *certain* 等:

It's said that *dead men tell no tales.* 据说死人嘴里什么也透露不出来。

It appears that *he forgot to sign the letter. (Alexander)* 似乎他忘记在信上签名了。(cf: *He appears to have forgotten to sign the letter.*)

It happened that *she was out when he called. (ALD)* 当他打电话时,她碰巧不在。(cf: *She happened to be out when he called.*)

It's likely that *he will retire next year.* 很可能他明年退休。

ii) 用作形式宾语

it 代替不定式、动名词或 *that* 从句用作形式宾语时,其后一般都要有补足成分,以形容词居多:

We consider **it** *foolish (of him) to meet her. (Close)* 我们认为他去见她是件愚蠢的事。

She finds **it** *boring staying/to stay at home. (ALD)* 她发现呆在家里很无聊。

I don't think **it** *worthwhile taking too much trouble.* 费太大的劲儿,我认为不值。

I took **it** *for granted that he would come. (RHD)* 我认为他当然会来。

He resents **it** *terribly that he's ill and I'm well.* 他身体不好而我身体很好,他因此非常气愤。

偶尔也有不带补足成分的:

I take **it** that we are to come early. (ALD) 我认为我们应该早
来。

Rumor has **it** that the government will be defeated in Parliament
tomorrow. (LDCE) 谣传明天的国会会议上现内阁将被反对
党击败。

引导介词宾语从句,介词与 **it** 常一起省略:

We'll see (to **it**) that she gets home early. (Hornby) 我们要保证
让她早早回到家。

She insisted (on **it**) that he was innocent. 她坚持认为他是无辜
的。

There is no doubt (about **it**) that John will come on time. 毫无疑
问,约翰会准时来。

3) **it** 用于虚指

句中无具体的指代对象,或在上下文中也不能找到具体的指代
对象。

i) **it** 用于虚指时间、距离、天气环境等

It is/has been three years since I saw him last. (RHD) 从我上
次见到他已三年了。(指时间)

It's five miles to town. (RHD) 这儿离城五英里。(指距离)

It never rains but it pours. (谚) 不雨则已,一雨倾盆。(指天气;
还另有含义:无事则已,有事成堆。)

It's noisy/smoky in here. (Alexander) 这儿有噪声/烟雾。(指
环境)

ii) 泛指一般情况

If **it** is convenient, I can see you tomorrow. (ALD) 如果方便,我
明天可以去看你。

It's getting very competitive in the car industry. (ALD) 汽车业
竞争很激烈。

If **it** weren't for Edna, I wouldn't go. (RHD) 若不是因为艾登娜的缘故, 我不会去。

iii) **it** 用于某些习语中

At last we've **made it**. 我们终于成功了。

Go it alone. 单枪匹马干吧!

You're **in for it**. 你要倒霉了。

4) **it** 用于分裂句(强调句)

i) 强调原句主语

It was I/me that/who broke the window. (RHD) 是我打破了窗子。(me 不正式)

ii) 强调原句宾语

It was Jack who(m) Freda phoned last night. (Alexander) 弗雷达昨晚是给杰可打的电话。

iii) 强调原句宾语补语

It was light blue that Ted painted his bedroom. 泰德把他卧室油的是浅蓝色。

iv) 强调原句状语

It was on Sunday that I saw him, not on Saturday. (ALD) 我看见他那天是星期天, 不是星期六。

v) 强调原句主语补语

It is Little Tiger that he is called. 人们叫他“小老虎”。

3.3 人称代词的泛指用法

we, you, one 都可用来泛指任何人:

We eat to live, not live to eat. 我们吃饭是为了活着, 但活着不是为了吃饭。

Some of **us** waste our/their money. (RWRT) 我们中有些人浪费

金钱。(用 **our** 表示 **some** 所指包括讲话人;若用 **their**, 则 **some** 不包括讲话人。)

If **you** run after two hares, **you** will catch neither. (谚) 身追两只兔子,一只也得不到。(要一心一意做事。)

One can't make an omelet without breaking eggs. (Swan) 不把鸡蛋打破,谁也做不了鸡蛋卷。(有所得必有所失。)

We 还可指“民族”或“政党”:

In the 19th century **we** neglected our poor as we amassed wealth; today **we're** much more concerned with the welfare of the people as a whole. (CGEL) 在 19 世纪,当我们积累财富时,我们忽视了我们的穷人;今天,我们更加关心全体人民的福利事业。

在著作或文章中,**We** 可用来表示包括作者和读者在内的一般人,口气亲切:

We now turn to a different problem. (CGEL) 现在我们转向另一个问题。

泛指时,**you** 和 **one** 含义一般是相同的,不过 **one** 更正式,**you** 更口语化。例如:

You (One) can always tell what she's thinking. (CGEL) 你/人们总是可以说出她在想什么。

one 的所有格形式是 **one's**:

If **one** wants to see the ruins, **one** must find **one's** own guide. (Close) 想看那片遗址,必须找到自己的导游。(美式英语中,第二个 **one** 及 **one's** 常用 **he** 及 **his** 取代: If **one** wants to see the ruins, **he** must find **his**...)

one 一般不能用来特指某个人,确定的一批人,或不含说话人在内的一群人:

I'm being served. 我有人接待了。(不说 * **One** is serving me.)

Someone is knocking at the door. 有人在敲门。(不说 * One is knocking at the door.)

English is spoken here./We speak English here. 这里讲英语。(不说 * One speaks English here.)

In the Middle Ages people believed in witches. 在中世纪人们信巫婆。(不说 * In the Middle Ages one believed in witches.)

但后接定语时,one 可表示某一类的人或事物:

A hero is **one** who does what he can. (RHD) 做他能够做的事,这样的人叫做英雄。

The question is **one** of importance. 这个问题是一个很重要的问题。

在古体或很正式的语体中,也用 he 泛指一类人:

He laughs best who laughs last. (谚) 谁笑到最后,谁笑得最好。

He who hesitates is lost. (谚) 当断不断,必受其患。

非正式语体中,也可用 they 泛指人,但不包括讲话人和听话人:

They say oil prices will be going up soon. (Alexander) 他们说石油价格要上涨。

they 也可用来指“当局”、“政府”、“宣传媒介”等,有时有轻蔑之意:

I see **they** are raising bus fares again. What ever will they be doing next? (CGEL) 我知道他们又要把汽车票价提高,下一步他们还会做什么呢?

3.4 性偏见:用 he/him/his 兼指两性

英语中,当所指对象为性别不定的单数人称代词(如 everyone, anyone)及名词(如 a student)时,常用阳性代词 he/him/his,而不用 she/her:

Everyone must pay **his** debts to nature. (谚)(RHD) 人人最终都要死。

“There’s someone at the door.” “What does **he** want?” (Close)
“有个人在门口。” “他想干什么?”

Each of us should do **his** duty. 我们每个人都要恪尽职守。(不能用 each’s 或 one’s)

Every student has to make up **his** mind. (CGEL) 每个学生都得拿定主意。

性别明确的情况下,不存在性偏见问题:

Each of the *nurses* has **her** merits. 这些护士每个都有自己的优点。

为了避免代词使用时的性偏见,人们可用 or 把 he 与 she 连起来使用,但显得罗嗦,一般只用于特别正式的文体中:

Has anybody brought **his or her** racket? (CGEL) 谁带球拍来了?

If a student wants more information, **he or she** should apply in writing. (Alexander) 学生想了解更多的信息,应写信申请。

在非正式说法中,可使用复数代词:

Ask anyone you like; **they** will tell you the same thing. (LLCE)
问任何一个人,他们都会给你同样的回答。

No one should pride **themselves** on this result. (CGEL) 谁也不应为这一成果感到骄傲。

When a person has no will to live, **they**’re very often difficult to help. (Swan) 一个人不想活时,很难给以帮助。

有时则避开单数名词,使用相应的复数名词:

All students have to hand in their paper today. (CGEL) 今天所有学生都得交论文。(不用 every student)

有时在指 everybody/everyone 时,使用 they 比 he 更自然,因为该二词在意义上是概括众人:

Everybody come to the party, but **they**'ve left now. (CGEL) 所有人都来参加聚会了,但是他们现在已经走了。

Did everybody leave the dance early because **they** weren't enjoying themselves? (CGEL) 大家是因为玩儿得不高兴而早早离开的吗?

I do my duty and I expect everyone else to do **theirs**. (LDCE) 我尽我的职责,我也希望所有其他人也尽自己的职责。

在这类句子后的附加问句中,常用 **they**:

Nobody came, did **they**? 没人来,是吗?

Someone borrowed my coat yesterday, didn't **they**? (Swan) 昨天有人借去我的外衣了,是吗?

3.5 拟人化代词的“性”

说话者有时把动物或自己喜爱的事物人格化,用 **he/she**;或在定语从句中使用关系代词 **who/whom**。

1) 当把动物看作具有人的感情时,用 **he** 或 **she** 等(动物常常用 **it** 指代,见 3.2“**it** 的多种功能”):

When the fox says **he** is a vegetarian, it's time for the hen to look out. (谚) 狐狸说他吃素,母鸡要加小心。

Each bird loves to hear **himself** sing. (谚) 鸟都爱听自己唱的歌。(自我欣赏,人之常情。)

I think Felicity's upset about something. **She**'s not giving much milk these days. (Swan) 我觉得菲利西蒂母牛有什么不高兴的事,她这些日子出奶不多。

Leautaud had a cat of his own **whom**/which both he and Blanche doted on. 柳陶自己有一只猫,他和勃兰奇都很喜欢他/它。把动物人格化用 **he** 或 **she**,这一情况要和因描述动物功能而用

he 或 she 的情况区分开来。如：

The cuckoo lays **her** eggs in other birds' nests. (Alexander) 杜鹃把蛋下在别的鸟窝里。(用 her 指那杜鹃鸟是雌性的)

2) 说话者谈到自己喜爱的船只、汽车、摩托车或其他机械时,常把它们人格化,并当作阴性来看待:

"How's your new car?" "Terrific. **She's** going like a bomb."

(Swan) "你的新车怎么样?" "好极了,劲儿像炸弹一样足。"

That's the Queen's yacht, Britannia. **She's** a beautiful ship. 那是女王的游艇“不列颠号”。她是一艘很漂亮的船。

"Yankee" has won four matches over "Rainbow", **who** has not won any races. "扬基号"四次胜过"彩虹号",后者在比赛中一次也没获胜。

3) 学校、城市、国家、大地等也可被'人格化,当成阴性:

Oxford taught me as much Latin and Greek as **she** could. 牛津尽可能多地教了我拉丁语和希腊语。

England is proud of **her** poets. (CGEL) 英格兰为她的诗人们感到骄傲。

We thank the earth for **her** beauty. 我们感谢大地把她的美赏赐给我们。

3.6 宾格形式顶替主格形式

一般情况下,作主语用主格代词,作宾语用宾语代词(参照3.1),但有时候亦可用宾格形式顶替主格形式。

1) 与 as 和 than 连用的人称代词

作主语时用主格,作宾语时用宾格,但用作主语的主格代词在非正式场合常被宾格顶替:

She is not as experienced as I (am) / **me**. (Swan) 她不如我有

经验。

I think you understand the problem better than I (do)/**me**. 我想你比我更理解这个问题。

被比较的代词与 all/both 连用时,常用宾格:

He is clever than **us all**. 他比我们大家都聪明。

但应注意用作宾语的宾格代词不能用主格去顶替:

I love you as much as (I love) **her**. (RHD) 我爱你像爱她一样。

(若说 “I love you as much as she.” 则意为“我像她一样爱你。”)

2) 用作表语的人称代词

按传统语法,表语应用主格,但实际使用中多用宾格:

“Who said that?” “I think it was he/**him**. (Swan)“谁说的?”“我想是他。”

尤其在省略句中,一般用宾格代词:

“Who wants a ride on my bike?” “**Me!** /Not **me!**” (Alexander)

“谁想坐我的自行车后边?”“我/我不坐!”(不说 * I/Not I!)

“Do you like her?” “**Me?**” (RHD)“你喜欢她吗?”“我?”

“I don't want to go to a political meeting.” “Nor **me/Me** neither!” (Alexander)“我不想去参加政治会议。”“我也不想。”

感叹句中也常用宾格代词:

“You can tell him.” “**Me** tell him? Not likely.” (Alexander)“你可以告诉他。”“我告诉他? 不可能。”

Woe is **me!** (RHD) 我真惨啊!

“She's been promoted.” “Lucky **her!**” (“Isn't she lucky!”) (Alexander)“她晋升了。”“她真幸运!”

3) 分裂句中的人称代词

强调原句作主语的人称代词时,常用主格。但非正式情况下,也可用宾格去顶替。例如:

Don't blame Harry. It was I/**me** who opened the letter. (Alexander) (I opened the letter.) 不要责怪哈利,是我打开的信。

但如果强调原句作宾语的人称代词,则一般只用宾格,不能以主格代替。例如:

It is **her** that we are talking about. (We're talking about her.) 我们谈论的是关于她的事。

3.7 主格形式顶替宾格形式

对应于宾格形式顶替主格形式,主格形式有时也用来顶替宾格形式。

1) 宾格 whom

whom 一般只用在正式场合。非正式或一般英语中,常用主格 who 来顶替。疑问句中尤其如此:

Who did they arrest? (Swan) 他们逮捕了谁? (正式: Whom did they arrest?)

Who did you see? (LLCE) 你见到谁了? (正式: Whom did you see?)

Who are you going with? (LLCE) 你要和谁一起去? (正式: With whom are you going?)

关系从句中,也是很正式场合才用 whom; 较随便情况下,用 who/that 或者省略关系代词:

They're delighted with the person **who(m)/that** we have appointed. (Swan) 他们对我们任命的那个人感到满意。

但宾格 whom 一般不能顶替主格 who:

This is the man **who** we thought was not coming. (CGEL) 这就是那个我们认为不会来的人。(we thought 为插入语, who 在定语从句中作主语)

She is a woman **who** people believe may be the president of the company some day. 人们认为她是有一天可能成为公司总裁的女人。(people believe 为插入语, who 在定语从句中作主语)

下面两种情况下,也不能用 who 去顶替 whom:

i) 非限制性定语从句中,作宾语的 whom 不能换成 who, 例如:

This is Mr. Perkins, **whom** you met at the sales conference.

(Swan) 这是帕金斯先生,在销售洽谈会上你曾见过他。

ii) 紧跟在介词之后 whom 不能换成 who, 例如:

He is the policeman **at whom** the burglar fired the gun. (CGEL)

他就是强盗朝他开枪的那个警察。

2) 介词 but/except 后的人称代词

按传统语法,介词后应用宾格代词,但实际使用中,若 but/except 置于句子主语和另一似属并列主语的代词之间时,它们后面可用主格代词。这时实际把 but/except 看作连词:

Everybody but me/I knew what was going on. (Swan) 除了我大家都知道正发生着什么事。

Nobody but her/she would do such a thing. 除了她没人会做这样的事。

但下句不能换成主格:

They were all there except **me**. (me 没有处在主语位置)除了他们都去那儿了。

3) Let 之后自然用宾格,但有时亦用主格

Let you and I try to make this all right. 让你和我努力把这事做好。

4) 一般说“between you and me”,口语中也用 I 代替 me

Between you and **me**, that is not a real diamond. 只是咱俩说,这不是一颗真钻石。

Tom, now let's have an understanding between you and I. 汤姆, 让你我之间互相理解。

3.8 's 所有格用于指生物的名词与代词

1) 人名、指人名词、不定代词多用 's 结构, 表其所有关系; 人格化的社会现象及自然现象名词可用 's 结构(不定代词、社会现象名词一般也可用 of 短语)

人名:

Keats' poetry 济慈的诗

指人名词:

He crashed into the **lady's** car. (CGEL) 她猛然撞上了那位女士的汽车。

We heard a **man's** voice. (Compton) 我们听见一个男人的声音。

不定代词: in **someone else's** presence/in the presence of someone else 当别人在场时

Each discovered **the other's** love. (Schibsbye) 他们俩各自都发现了对方之动情。(... the love of the other)

Those two are always copying **each other's** homework. (Alexander) 那两个总是互相抄作业。

my life's aim/the aim of my life. (Jones) 我生活的目标

社会现象:

in **freedom's** name/in the name of freedom. (ib) 以自由的名义

人名、指人名词很少用 of 短语, 除非为了句子均衡或后接更多修饰语:

the works of Byron, Shelley and Keats 拜伦、雪莱和济慈的作品

He crashed into the car of the lady in front of him. (CGEL) 他撞上了前面那位女士的汽车。

并列或同位的名词常常不用's结构,而用of短语:不说 * his daughter's, a student of German, arrival, 而说 the arrival of his daughter, a student of German. 他女儿(德语学生)的到来。

2) 指动物(尤其高级动物)可用's结构(也可用of短语)

the **eagles'** nests/the nests of the eagles (Jones) 鹰巢

the **bee's** sting/the sting of a bee (ib) 蜜蜂的螫针

3) 指团体、机构、企事业等可用's结构(也可用of短语)

the **army's** advance/the advance of the army (ib) 军队的前进

the **committee's** decision/the decision of the committee (ib) 委员会的决定

the **industry's** geographical distribution/the geographical distribution of the industry (Jones) 工业的地理分布

3.9 's 所有格用于交通工具等

指交通工具、建筑、设施等可用's结构(一般也可用of短语):

a **glider's** wings/the wings of a glider (Thomson) 滑翔机的机翼

the **hotel's** entrance/the entrance of the hotel (ib) 旅馆的入口

the **dam's** importance to Indian prosperity/the importance of the dam to Indian prosperity (Schibsbye) 该拦河坝对印度繁荣的重要性

a **ship's** carpenter (Eckersley) 一名造船工 (ship's carpenter 为固定词组,如说 a/the carpenter of a ship,则意“一条船上的一名木工”)

3.10 's 所有格用于处所、空间量、时间量、金额及其他度量

1)指处所,包括日、月、地球,用's结构(也可用of短语)

the **sun's/moon's/earth's** surface (Schwann) (也可说 the surface of the sun/the moon/the earth) 太阳/月亮/地球的表面

the **sea's** cold embrace/the cold embrace of the sea (Schibsbye) 大海那冰冷的怀抱

2) 指空间量,用 's 结构(也可用 of 短语)

It's a **30 miles'** journey/a thirty-mile journey. 三十英里的路程。

(但不常说 a journey of 30 miles。但可说 a length of 3.26 cm (Jones); at/from a distance of 20 miles. (LDCE))

有些空间量的表达常用不带 's 的指量名词词组作定语:

One ant hole may cause the collapse of a thousand li dyke. (汉谚)
千里之堤,溃于蚁穴。

win the 100-metre dash (NDEC) 在百米赛跑中获胜

3) 指时间、时间量用 's 结构(有时也可用 of 短语)

today's/yesterday's language (Schibsbye) (cf. the language of today/yesterday (Schibsbye)) 当今的/从前的语言

Tires turn, and people shop for **the week's** food at the big supermarket down the highway. 汽车轮一转,人们就顺公路到大超级市场去购买一周的食物。

Have a **ten minutes'** break/Have a ten-minute break. (Thomson)
(不常说 a break of ten minutes) 休息十分钟。

a **month's** salary (Alexander) 一个月的薪金

returned after **two years'** absence/after an absence of two years (Thorndike) 离开两年后回来了

a **good day's** work (Pythian) 一整天的工作(不常说 work of a good day)

4) 指重量、金额等可用 's 结构(也可用 of 结构)

two hundred pound's weight (Needham) 二百磅的重量(cf. attain a weight of two hundred pound(s))

millions of **pound's** worth of goods (Needham) (不说 * worth of millions of pounds)

从 3.7、3.8、3.9 各节看出 's 所有格与 of 短语有时可互换使用。但某些习惯搭配中是不能互换的。如：

at duty's call 按照本分的要求

at one's wits' end 智穷计尽(不知所措)

in one's mind's eye 在自己心目中

escape by a hair's breadth 险一点儿不能逃脱

for goodness' sake 看在老天的面上

(keep sb.) at arm's length (保持和某人)不即不离

out of harm's way 避开风险

to one's heart's content 尽情(…个够)

(obtain/take) a bird's-eye view(得以/作一番)鸟瞰

因为后重点(特别是句末重点)的关系,用 's 结构多着重被修饰语,of 短语多着重 of 的介词宾语:

She's got her **mother's** graceful figure. (Lewis) 她有和她母亲一样的优雅身段。

She's got the graceful figure of her mother. (ib) 她有着优雅的身段,就像她母亲一样。

Among the global problems, the chief one is **the world's** economy. (CGEL) 在全球众多问题中,最主要的是世界的经济。

The economy of the industrialized nations is the basis of the sound economy of the world. (ib) 各工业国家的经济是世界健全经济之基础。

's 结构中名词多表本义,of 短语中各词可表转义或喻义:

He heard his **brother's** footsteps. (Schibsbye) 他听到他弟弟的脚步声。

She followed in the footsteps of her husband. (ib) 她踏着她丈夫

的足迹继续前进了。

Exercise 3

I. 填入人称代词宾格或主格形式:

1. It was Thomas and _____ whom you met.
2. It was _____ who helped me most.
3. What were you and _____ studying?
4. This change will make no difference to either _____ or _____.
5. Neither _____ nor _____ is able to go.
6. Very few could do it faster than _____.
7. The book was intended for you and _____.

II. 填入人称代词正确的形式:

1. Let each of the girls take _____ own place.
2. Either Tom or Jack will lend you _____ book.
3. If any one inquires about me, tell _____ that I am well.
4. Each pupil was asked to name _____ favourite author.
5. Someone has evidently been here in our absence, for _____ has left the door open.

III. 从括号中选择正确的答案:

1. It was (he, him) who helped the lady yesterday.
2. The mother had no doubt about (who, whom) would become her son-in-law.
3. The old man kept talking about Tom and (her, she).
4. To (who, whom) were you speaking?

5. One has to be careful about (one's, one) friends and acquaintances.
6. The cherry tree gives (its, it's) share of color to the garden, and the lilac tree gives (its, it's, it).
7. Neither of them could make up (his, their, her) mind.

IV. 指出下列句中 it 的用法(指前面所提事物、指天气或天色、用作引导词形式主语、用作分裂句主语等):

1. This is my dictionary. I got it cheaply as its cover was torn.
2. Look at the bird. It always comes to my window.
3. In winter it's dark at six o'clock.
4. It was Peter who lent us the money.
5. It is strange that he has not returned.
6. It was against all my principles to work with them.

第四章 本体代词惯用法

4.1 用作宾语、介词宾语的反身代词

1) 反身代词用作动词的宾语,最常用来指前面提到的人或事物本身:

I cut **myself** shaving this morning. (Swan) 我今天上午刮胡子时把脸刮破了。

He felt **himself** very ignorant and very humble. (Maugham) 他感觉自己很无知、很卑贱。

The refrigerator defrosts **itself**. (Thomson) 那冰箱自己除霜。

We got out of the river and dried **ourselves**. (Swan) 我们从河里出来,擦干身子。

反身代词也可能返回来指从句的主语,非限定动词的逻辑主语或“隐含主语”:

I hope you'll both enjoy **yourselves**. (Galsworthy) (指从句主语) 我希望你们两个人都会玩得很高兴。

She asked *John* to invite **himself**. (CGEL) (不能用 herself) 她让约翰不请自去。

Help **yourselves**! (ib) 自己来! (隐含主语为 you, 所以不能说 Help ourselves/themselves.)

有少数及物动词如 busy, absent, pride, avail 等必须跟反身代词作宾语:

She busied **herself** in cleaning the house. (RHD) 她忙于清扫房子。

You must avail **yourself** of every opportunity to speak English.

(ALD) 你必须利用一切机会讲英语。

The man prided **himself** on his financial success. (Halsey) 那人
为自己的发迹感到骄傲。

All the students absented **themselves** from the class. (Eckersley)
所有的学生都没去上课。

而在一些动词后,既可以用反身代词作宾语,也可省略反身代词,如 adjust (oneself) to, hide (oneself), prove (oneself) (to be), prepare (oneself) for, identify (oneself) with, worry (oneself), show (oneself), dress (oneself), wash (oneself) 等:

The body quickly adjusts (**itself**) to changes in temperature.

(ALD) 身体很快就适应温度的变化。

He proved (**himself**) (to be) a better driver than the world champion. (ib) 他证明自己是比世界冠军还优秀的赛车手。

He has to shave (**himself**) twice a day. (Alexander) 他必须一天刮两次脸。

Behave (**yourself**) now! (ib) 现在放规矩点!

在谈到儿童、老人、病人等情况时,往往在 dress, shave, wash (洗脸)等词后用反身代词,强调动作是有意识地努力完成的:

Polly's nearly learnt how to dress **herself**. (Alexander) 波莉差不多学会自己穿衣服了。

Little Albert is only four, but he can feed **himself**, wash **himself** and dress **himself**. (Eckersley) 小阿尔伯特才四岁,但却能自己吃饭、自己洗脸和自己穿衣。

有时,反身代词(句子前面无其所指对象)与另一名词短语并列作宾语(这种用法不太标准,宜用宾格代词):

They've invited Mr. Jones and me/**myself** to the talk. (RWRT)

他们邀请了我 and 琼斯先生去参加讲座。

The headmaster put George and me/**myself** in the same class.

(Close) 校长让我和乔治在同一个班里。

注意使用反身代词和普通代词在意义上的差别：

Jane's mother dresses **her**/dresses **herself** before 8 am. (CGEL)

(her 指 Jane, herself 指 Jane's mother 本人) 简的妈妈在八点之前给简穿衣/简的妈妈八点之前起床穿衣。

Jane's mother got **her** up/got **herself** up before 8 am. (ib) (差别

同上) 简的妈妈在八点之前让简起床/简的妈妈八点之前起床。

He saw **himself**/saw **him** in the mirror. (ib) (him 指另外一个人)

人) 他照镜子/他从镜子里看到了那个人(另一个人)。

注意 work at, accuse, blame, criticize, help 等接用反身代词与相互代词在意义上的差别。比较：

They were criticizing **themselves**. (Swan) 他们正进行自我批评。

They were criticizing **each other**. (ib) 他们正互相批评着对方。

The two bank clerks blamed **themselves** for the mistake. (Alexander)

两个银行职员都为那个错误而责备自己。(自己责备自己)

The two bank clerks blamed **each other** for the mistake. (ib) 两个

银行职员都为那个错误而责备对方。(互相责备对方)

注意反身代词没有所有格形式,可用 own 来表示“…自己的…”：

I'd like to have **my own** car. (Alexander) (不说 *myself's car)

我想有自己的汽车。

Every cook praises **his own** broth. (谚) 每个厨师都说自己做的

肉汤香。

2) 反身代词用作介词的宾语,返回来指主语或某一名词性成分：

She looked at **herself** in the looking-glass. (Eckersley) 她从梳妆镜里照了照。

She addressed the envelope to **herself**. (Thomson) 她在信封上收信人地址处写上了自己的地址。

For **myself**, I chose the cheapest dish on the menu. (RHD) (返身代词因强调而提前,更常说 I choose for myself...) 我为自己选了菜单上最便宜的菜。

He asked her for a picture of **herself**. (ib) (回指同性别的宾语) 他向她要一张她的照片。

Philip's boundless admiration of **himself** is well known. (CGEL) 菲利普无限的自我欣赏是广为人知的。

类似作动词宾语的情况,有时反身代词与另一词或短语并列作介词的宾语:

It fell upon **herself and her sister** to support their family. (RHD) 养活全家人的担子落在了她和姐姐身上。

There was an invitation to **my wife and myself**. (Eckersley) 有人邀请我和我妻子。

在表示位置的介词后一般不用反身代词,而用宾格代词:

He looked about **him**. (Swan) 他环顾四周。

Has he any money on **him**? (Thomson) 他带着钱吗?

They put the child between **them**. (ib) 他们把孩子放到他们中间。

She pushed the cart in front of **her**. (CGEL) 她推着身前的小推车。

They carried some food with **them**. (ib) 他们带着一些食物。

She had her fiancé beside **her**. (ib) 她让未婚夫挨着自己。

We have the whole day before **us**. (ib) 我们还有一整天时间呢。

I enjoy having my friends around/by/near **me**. (Close) 我喜欢我

的朋友在我身边。

但某些惯用语中,位置介词后要用反身代词:

She was **beside herself with** rage. (CGEL) 她气得发疯。

Strictly **between ourselves**, do you think she is sane? (ib) 咱们私下里说,你认为她神智清醒吗?

In itself, his illness is nothing to worry about. (Alexander) 就他的病情本身来看,没什么可担心的。

在某些介词如 like, than, (as:..) as, but (for), except (for) 和 as for 之后,既可用反身代词也可用宾格代词:

For someone like **me/myself**, this is a big surprise. (CGEL) 对于像我这样的人来说,这真是件令人大惊的事。

Except for **us/ourselves**, the whole village is asleep. (ib) 除了我们之外,整个村庄都在睡梦之中。

His wife is as stingy as **him/himself**. (RHD) 他妻子和他一样小气。

No one knows more about the matter than **me/myself**. (ib) 没有人比我更了解这件事的详情。

Guerxero's friends made their peace with the gang. As for **him/himself**, there was little he could do but await the inevitable bullet in his back. (CGEL) 古克斯罗的朋友与那帮人讲和了。至于他本人,只能等着迟早要射向他后背的子弹。

4.2 用于强调主语的反身代词

1) 反身代词可强调主语,这时它放在主语后或其他位置:

I myself wouldn't take any notice. (CGEL) (主语后)我自己对此根本不予理睬。

I wouldn't take any notice **myself**. (ib) (宾语后)(译文同上)

Myself, I wouldn't take any notice of her. (ib) (主语前) 对于她, 我自己是根本不予理睬的。

The headmaster met us at the door **himself**. (Close) (状语后) 校长亲自在门口迎接我们。

Tom went **himself**. (Thomson) (谓语后; 这时谓语为不及物动词) 汤姆自己去了。

I heard it from the lady who **herself** was present. (RHD) (用于从句主语后) 我是从在场那位太太那儿听说的。

反身代词也可强调宾语, 这时一般放在宾语后:

She liked the diamond **itself** but not the setting. (Thomson) 她喜欢的是钻石本身而不是它的镶嵌底座。

I showed Ian **himself** the letter. (CGEL) (不能把 himself 放在句尾: * I showed Ian the letter himself.) 我让伊安亲自看了那封信。

I spoke to the President **himself**. (Thomson) 我和总统本人说了话。

注意下列句子在意义上的差别:

I did it **myself**. (Thomson) 我自己做的这件事。(是我做的而不是别人做的)

I did it **by myself**. (ib) 我自己一个人做的这件事。(强调没有别人帮忙而独立完成)

Are you really afraid I can't get home **by myself**? (Voynich) 你真担心我一个人不能回家吗?(强调无人陪伴)

2) 反身代词可以与另一名词性成分并列作主语(但有人主张不用反身代词而使用普通代词):

My sister and I/myself went sailing yesterday. (CGEL) 我和我姐姐昨天驾驶帆船出游了一次。

My wife and myself were invited to the party. (Eckersley) 我和我妻子被邀请参加聚会。

I hope **Miss O'Leary and yourself** are keeping well. (Yeats) 我希望你和奥丽尔莉小姐身体健康。

Neither Nancy nor herself would attend the party. (RHD) 南希和她本人都不会出席舞会。

反身代词有时孤立地用作主语,可见于文学语体或很随便的口语中。现代英语中一般不这样使用:

Myself is thus and so, and will continue thus and so. (CGEL) 我自己就是这样子,并将始终是这个样子。

Who suffers by his whims? **Himself** always. 为他的狂想吃苦头的是谁呢? 总是他自己。

She would have no one to push the swing for her, but **herself** drove it high into the air and down again. (ib) 她不要人给她推秋千,而是自己一个人高高荡上去,再荡下来。

Himself will be wanting an early dinner. (RHD) (himself 指男主人) 他本人要早早地吃饭。

I proposed that **myself** should go instead of the manager. (ib) 我建议经理不去,我自己去。

反身代词可在独立结构中作逻辑主语:

Himself (being) the soul of honour, he included many rascals among his intimates. (RHD) 他自己虽然是个正直的人,但他却收留了很多恶棍作为自己的亲信。

Myself, the nearest relative, I raised a formal lament for the dead of the family. (ib) 作为这家人的最近亲属,我为这个家庭的死者组织了正式的追悼会。

4.3 self/selves 单独使用

self/selves 可以作宾语或介词宾语表示“自己”:

She placed her radiant **self** at his side. (RHD) 她来到他身边,显得神采奕奕。

By doing that he showed his true **self**. (ALD) 通过做那件事,他显示了他的真实面目。

He put his whole **self** into the job, working night and day. (LDCE) 他不分昼夜地全身心投入工作。

It is a good thing to think more of others and less of **self**. (Thorndike) 更多地为别人着想而较少的为自己着想,这是一件好事。

Ah! That's more like your own **self**, I like to hear you laugh like that. (Henderson) 啊! 这才更像你自己,我喜欢你那样哈哈大笑。

Let us drink a toast to our noble **selves**! (ALD) 让我们为我们这些高尚的人自己祝福吧!

self 也可作表语表示“原来的样子,正常情况”:

You're not quite your usual **self**, are you? (Dreiser) 你现在不大正常,是不是?

She smiled. He was his old **self** again. (Walpole) 她笑了。他又恢复了他本来的样子。

self 也常用来构成合成词:

Self-praise is no recommendation. (谚) 自夸起不到赞美的作用。

But I had my **self-respect** to think of. (Maugham) 但我要考虑自尊。

Repeated failure in school was harming the boy's **self-confidence**.

(FWF) 学习上的屡次挫折伤害着那男孩的自信心。

Abraham Lincoln was a **self-made** man. (Whitford) 亚伯拉罕·林肯是个靠自己成才的人。

We hold these truths to be **self-evident** that all men are created

equal... (LDCE) 我们认为这样的道理是不证自明的,即所有的人生来平等...

4.4 one 原数词兼任代词

1) one 作数词表示确切的数量:

One shotgun is no good. (I need two or three). (Thomson) 一支猎枪不够用。(我需要两三支。)

One swallow does not make a summer. (谚) 一燕不成夏。(一例不足论全盘。)

One day in time is lost (gained) on crossing 180-longitude westward (eastward). (NDEC) 向西越过 180 度经线就错过了日历上的一天。(向东越过 180 度经线就多得日历上的一天。)

One scabbed sheep will mar a whole flock. (谚) 一只绵羊生癞疮, 整个羊群全遭殃。

在表示类属时, 要用不定冠词 a:

A shotgun is no good. (Thomson) 猎枪不顶用。

I have lost **a** day. (古罗马皇帝 Titus 如一日没为臣民办好事便说) 我白过了一天。

As well be hanged for **a** sheep as for **a** lamb. (谚) 弄只羊羔也是绞死, 弄只绵羊也是绞死。(索性大干。)

one 与不定冠词 a 有时意义相同, 但结构可能不同:

I would like **a/one** photocopy of this article. (CGEL) 我想要这篇文章的一份复印件。(one 较 a 正式)

He did it in **a third/one-third** (of) the time it took me. (ib) 他完成这工作只用了我所用时间的三分之一。

I've been waiting for **an hour and a half/one and a half hours**. (Swan) (不同搭配) 我一直等了一个半小时了。

Take them all out and get it over at **a/a single/one** blow.

(DCTE) (不宜罗嗦成 at one single blow) 把它们(这些牙)全拔掉,把烦恼一笔勾销得了!

有时在表示较强语气,突出数量“一”时,要用 one 而不用 a:

I only want **one** ticket, you've given me two. (Close) 我只想要一张票,可你却给了我两张。

A/one million is **one** thousand thousand. (Schibsbye) 一百万就是一千个一千。

在表示数字时,数字中间的“百”、“千”用 one 不用 a,如 1100 — one thousand **one** hundred. (Swan)

2) 数词 one 指不确定的或听者未知的时间:

One day/Some day you'll be sorry you treated him so badly. (不确定的将来时间) (Thomson) 有朝一日你会懊悔曾待他这样不好。

One sunny day stirred old memories. (Schisbye) (听者未知的过去的一天) 一个晴和的日子牵动了往事的回忆。

One morning he was called from class to the office of the headmaster. (Sinclair) (听者未知的过去的一个上午) 一天上午上课时他被叫到了校长办公室。

注意 one day 和 a day 在句法功能上的差别。one day 可作状语(如上面第一个例句),而 a day 却不能作状语:

There does not pass **a day** without my consulting it. (NDEC) (a day 作主语) 没有一天我不查阅这部词典的。

We met again on **a fine/bright autumn day**. 我们重逢于一个晴朗的秋日。(作介词宾语)

3) 数词 one 用于姓名或姓氏前表“某一位”:

One John Smith was chosen: (RHD) 一位约翰·史密斯被选中了。

There's a man from my own parish, a warder, **one** Whelan.

(Schibsbye) (不能说 * a Whelan)那里有个从我自己教区来的人,是狱吏,一个姓韦兰的人。

不定冠词可加在姓氏前表类属,比较:

A/**one** Mr. Smith has called. (Schibsbye) 一位史密斯先生曾来过电话。

He's a **Smith** (a member of the Smiths). (RHD) 他是史密斯家的一员。

4) **one** 有时作代词表示(某些人或物中的)一个:

There were three kings and **one** was black. (LDCE) 有三个国王,其中一个是黑人。

One of the boys has shot himself. (ib) 其中一个男孩儿自杀了。

He is **one** of my/my father's friends. (ALD) 他是我的/我父亲的一个朋友。

He wrote several novels, of which **one** is successful. (RHD) 他写了几部小说,其中一本很成功。

5) **one** 用作代词,相当于“a person”:

A hero is **one** who does what he can. (RHD) 英雄是做了他能够做的事的人。

The officer is **one** who gives orders. (LDCE) 长官是发号施令的人。

He had the air of **one** on holiday. (RHD) 他带着度假者的神气。

He is not **one** to bow before difficulties. 他不是向困难低头的人。

6) **one** 用作不定人称代词,表示“任何人(anyone)”。与 **one** 呼应的代词可以是 **one/one's/oneself**,也可以是 **he/his/himself**(另见 3.3):

One can be glad and sorry at the same time. (RHD) 一个人可以同时又悲又喜。

One's home is **one's** capital. (谚) 一个人的家就是一个人的首府。

One should always give **oneself** plenty of time to pack. (Swan) 我们应该总是给自己留下充足的时间打点行装。

One always does **himself** and **his** audience an injustice when he speaks merely for the sake of speaking. (RHD) 一个人只是为讲话而讲话, 无论何时他都是亏待了自己和听众。

4.5 one 与 someone/somebody 及 some one

one 泛指“任何人 (anyone)”, 一般用于正式文体, 口语中常用 you 来代替:

One/You can always tell what she's thinking. (CGEL) 人们/你总能说出她在想什么。

Wherever **one** goes, there's always a spy hanging about. (Voynich) 无论一个人走到哪儿, 总有密探在他附近监视。

One has to be so careful of one's friends and acquaintances. (Wells) 我们对朋友和熟人要非常小心。

泛指一类不能用 one 带限定或修饰成分, 如不能说:

* The cautious one can't be too careful, can **the one**? (CGEL)
(应说: ... can he/the man?)

* In the Middle Ages, **one** believed in witches. (应说: ... people...)

someone 与 somebody 同义, 指“某个人 (a certain person)”。但前者较为正式或语气较强:

There's **somebody** at the door. (ALD) 门口有个人。

It needs **somebody** of some experience. (Priestley) 这工作需要有些经验的人。

She wants **someone** to look after her. (Snow) 她想有个人能照

看她。

Someone has to lock up the house. (Thorndike) (“我们当中的”)

某个人必须把房子锁好。

但 **someone** 与 **somebody** 分别用于下列结构：“... or **somebody**”
和“**someone** or other”。

This sort of work needs a mechanic **or somebody**. (Palmer) 这种

工作需要机械师之类的人。

Someone or other has broken my pen. (MED) 有人弄断了我的

笔。

somebody 还意为“重要人士”之义：

He thinks he is really **somebody**. (ALD) 他认为他真是个人物。

They tried to look **somebodies**. (RHD) 他们努力使自己看上去

像是几位人物。

some one 指“某个人 (a certain person)”或“某件物 (a certain

thing)”，通常要后接 of 短语，且 one 要重读：

Some one of us must go. (RHD) 我们之中必须有个人去。

Some one of them must have done it. (ib) 这事一定是他们中某

个人干的。

I like **some one** of your photos. 你照片中有一张我很喜欢。

4.6 **anyone/anybody** 与 **any one**

1) **any one/anybody** 同义指“任何(一个)人”，但前者较为正式
或语气较强：

Is there **anyone** at home? (Swan) 家里有人吗？

(Has) **Anybody** anything more to say? (Galsworthy) 有人还有什么
要说的吗？

I do not envy **anybody**. (RHD) 我不嫉妒任何人。

Don't be dependent on **anyone** for anything. (Walpole) 什么事也不要依靠任何别人。

用在肯定句时, anybody/anyone 后常带有情态动词:

Anybody will tell you where the bus stop is. (ALD) 任何一个人都会告诉你汽车站在哪儿。

Anyone can do that. (Collins) 任何一个人都能做那件事。

anybody 还指“重要人士”:

If you want to be **anybody**, you must work hard. (LDCE) 若想成为个人物,你必须努力工作。

Everybody who is **anybody** was there. (MD) 有头有脸的人都在那儿。

2) any one 指“任何一个人”或“任何一个物”,one 要重读。在结构上,any one 通常后接 of 短语:

Can **any (one)** of the boys play the flute? (RHD) 这些男孩中有谁会吹笛子吗?

There're many candidates, **any (one)** of whom could do a good job. (ib) 有很多候选人,每个都能做得很不错。

Join the Disc of the Month Club, and we will send you **any (one)** of these magnificent stereo recordings absolutely free. (Swan) 加入“每月磁盘”俱乐部,我们就会完全免费送您这些精彩立体声唱片中的任何一张。

They come in several different colours — we can supply **any one** you like. (RWRT) 我们进的货有多种不同的颜色 —— 我们能够供应您喜欢的任何一种。

4.7 no one/nobody 与 none

1) no one 与 nobody 含义大体相同,表示“没有人”、“没谁”:

Everybody's companion/friend is **nobody's** friend. (谚) 对谁都友好, 没人对他友好。

There was **no one** to look after the child. (Snow) 没人照管这孩子。

It's an ill wind that blows **nobody** good. (谚) 世上没有对人人皆不利的事。

No one is home. (RHD) 没有一个人在家。

但在表示“小人物”意思时, 用 **nobody**:

I am sorry — a **nobody** like myself — to speak like this. (RHD) 对不起, 像我这样微不足道的人, 却如此讲话。

Your friends are all just a bunch of **nobodies**. (ALD) 你的朋友只是一群不值一提的人。

2) **none** 既可指人, 也可指物, 本义为“没有一个”, 突出数量“一个”, 而 **no one/nobody** 仅指人, 不突出数量概念:

None of them has any great ability. (Wood) (指人) 他们之中没有一个有什么大本领。

He is second to **none** in describing human character. (RHD) (指人) 在描写人物性格上, 他不次于任何人。

“Have you got any books?” “No, I haven't got any; **none** at all.”

“你有书吗?” “没有, 一本也没有。”(指物)

No one dared to speak of it. (LDCE) 没人敢提起那事。

She likes **nobody** and **nobody** likes her. (ib) 她不喜欢谁, 也没有谁喜欢她。

none 后常常接 *of* 短语, 而 **nobody/no one** 一般不接:

None of my friends wished me a happy birthday. (Swan) 我的朋友中没有一个祝贺我的生日。(比较 **Nobody** wished...)

None of them got a prize. 他们中没有人得奖。(比较 **Not one of** them got a prize, **not one of** 比 **none of** 语气更强)

None of these improvements has cost much. (Yeats) 这些改善工程中没有一项花钱很多。

He has **none of** his brother's selfishness. (Halsey) 他一点儿没有他哥哥的自私心。(用于不可数名词)

Lester has lost none of his charm for her. (Dreiser) 对她来说,莱斯特魅力丝毫未减。

none 作主语时,若指可数事物,谓语动词一般既可用单数也可用复数(见 4.8);而 no one 与 nobody 作主语时,谓语动词只用单数:

None of the books has/have been placed to the shelves. (Swan)
这些书没有一本/都没放到书架上去。

No one wants to interfere with you. (Galsworthy) 没人想干涉你。

There's **nobody** in the room. (Eckersley) 房间里没人。

3) no one/nobody 回答 who 引导的问句,而 none 回答 how many/much 引导的问句:

"Who's in the dining room?" "**Nobody/No one.**" (Eckersley)
"谁在饭厅?" "没有人。"

"How many people/pears are there?" "**None.**" "有多少人/梨?"
"一个没有。"

"How much petrol is there in the car?" "**None.**" (Eckersley) "汽车里有多少汽油?" "一点儿没有。"

回答 what 引导的问句要用 nothing 而不用 none:

"What's on the table?" "**Nothing.**" (Dreiser) "桌上有什么?"
"什么也没有。"

"What's the matter?" "**Nothing. Nothing's** the matter." (Hemingway) "怎么了?" "没事。什么事也没有。"

4) 有时 none 相当于 nobody/no one,多见于比较结构中:

There are **none** so blind as those who will not see. (RWRT) 没有

比视而不见的人更瞎了。

There is **no one** so blind as he who will not see. (ib)(译文同上)

The choir sang sweetly, and **none** more so than the Welsh boy.

(ALD) 合唱队唱得很甜,尤其是那个威尔士男孩,没有谁能超过他了。

none 和 but, other than 搭配,形成惯用语:

None but Johnison could have done such a thing. 只有约翰逊才可能做出这样的事。(比较“Who knows the secret?”“**Nobody but** Jane knows it.”“谁知到这个秘密?”“除了简没人知道。”)

The new arrival was **none other than** the president. 那位新到的人正是总统。

4.8 none 指可数或不可数事物

1) none 指三者以上的可数事物,意思是“没有一个(not one/not any)”:

We had three cats once — **none** (of them) is/are alive now.

(ALD) 我们从前有三只猫——(它们之中)现在没有一个活着。(作主语)

Many men have several votes; others have **none** at all. (Hazen)

很多人得了几张选票,其他人一张也没得到。(作宾语)

Jack of all trades and master of **none**. (谚) 行行都懂,行行稀松。

(作介词宾语)

None of the guests wants to stay. (ALD) 这些客人没有一个想

留下来。(作主语)

He liked **none** of the books. (Lewis) 这些书他一本都不喜欢。

(作宾语)

none 有时用于下面的同位语结构:

We **none** of us said anything. (Du Maurier) 我们谁都没说什么。

We have **none** of us large appetites. (Mansfield) 我们哪个都没有多少食欲。

2) none 指不可数事物,表示“没有一点 (not any)”:

I wanted some string but there was **none** in the house. (ALD)

(作主语) 我想找点儿绳子,但房子里一根也没有。

Lolly had some knowledge of how very ill she was, but I had **none**. (作宾语) 洛丽对她病情的严重程度有所了解,但我一点儿也不知道。

None of this money is mine. (ALD) (作主语) 这笔钱没有一点儿是我的。

She had **none** of her brother's beauty. (LDCE) (作宾语) 她哥哥的好容貌她一点儿也没有。

That's **none** of your business. (RHD) 那不关你的事。

He understood **none** of the lecture. (Watson) (none 指 the lecture 的内容) 他对这个讲座的内容一点儿都不理解。

3) none 指可数事物作主语时,若强调单一或对比于单一事物时,谓语动词宜用单数;若强调全体,表示“此类事物都没有”时,谓语动词常用复数:

None of them is the man I wanted. 他们中没有一个是我要的。

None but the brave (one) **deserves** the fair. (RWRT) 只有勇士才配得美女。

When he went to the library to find a book on the subject, the librarian had assured him there **was none**. (RWRT) (was 比 were 好) 当他去图书馆找一本关于那门学科的书时,图书管理员肯定地告诉他一本也没有。

但单复数的界限常常是模糊的,往往使用哪类动词都可以:

None of the telephones **is/are** working. (LDCE) 这些电话没有一部能用。

None of my friends ever **come(s)** to see me. (ib) 我的朋友没有一个来看我。

The seven boats set out a week ago, and so far **none** of them **has/have** returned. (RWRT) 那七条船一周前出发的,可到现在一条也没回来。

none 指不可数事物作主语时,谓语动词自然应用单数形式:

None of the money **was** recovered. 这笔钱一点儿也没追回来。

4.9 none 兼任副词

1) 与 the + 形容词比较级连用,含义为“并不(因为…)更…一些”:

He spent two weeks in hospital but he's **none the better** for it.

(LDCE) 他在医院住了两周,但身体并未好转。

After hearing her talk on computers I'm afraid I'm **none the wiser**. (ALD) 在听她讲了计算机后,我觉得我还不明白。

He's **none the worse** for falling into the river. (ALD) 他掉进河里,却没有什么事。

惯用语 none the less 含义为“尽管如此,仍旧…”,与 nevertheless 同义:

They had apologized to him, but he was **none the less** angry.

(Clark) 他们已向他道歉了,但他仍然很生气。

Despite his disappointing record this year, **I none the less** feel that he is the best man we have in the department. (Whitford) 尽管他今年成绩不佳,可我仍然认为他是我们部的最佳人选。

It's not cheap, but I think we should buy it **none the less**. (ALD)
那不便宜,但我想我们还是应当买它。

None the less it is one of the most powerful weapons the workers possess. (Pollitt) 尽管如此,那是工人所拥有的最有力的武器之一。

2) none 与 too + 形容词/副词连用,含义为“不太…”,“一点也不…”:

The salary they pay me is **none** too high. (ALD) 他们给我的工资不太高。

The supply is **none** too great. (RHD) 供应品不丰富。

I am **none** so fond of golfing. (ib) 我不大喜欢打高尔夫球。

I arrived **none** too soon. (ib) 我到得很早了。

He did it **none** too well/badly/quickly. (Palmer) 他做得一点儿不好/还不错/并不快。

He gave a **none**-too-believable excuse for his absence. (LDCE) 他为那次缺席提出一个不太令人相信的借口。

4.10 each other 与 one another 的异同

each other 原用于二者之间。现在只要上下文交代明白,也用于更多人或更多事物之间。它属日常语,常代替 one another。one another 原用于三者或三者以上之间,现在有时代替 each other(通常仅在较正式用语或文学用语中)。

1) 都可作直接宾语、间接宾语

The three men distrusted **one another/each other**. (Wood) 这三人互不信任。

The pastor looked farther away, to where the sea and sky met **one another**. (Powys) 牧人向远处那海空相接的地方望去。

They blamed **each other**. (They each blamed the other.)

(CGEL) 他们(二人或更多人)互相怪罪。

The party leaders promised to give **each other/one another** their support. (CGEL) (间接宾语) 党的领导人承诺互相支持。

2) 都可作介词宾语

The couple took places opposite **each other** at the table. (RHD)

那夫妻二人在饭桌对面的座位上坐了下来。

Many a newly-wed couple has received the admonition "Be kind to **one another**". (Harper) 许多新婚夫妇都聆听过这样的劝戒:

“要和睦相处。”

3) 都可用所有格作定语

The students can borrow **each other's/one another's** books.

(CGEL) 学生们可以彼此借书。

Arnold and I fell in love with each other on this voyage. We had time to know **one another's** minds. (Robertson) 这次海上旅行中,阿诺德和我相爱了。我们有时间了解彼此的想法。

但是,在确指存在多个成员的双方对应关系时,一般只用 *each other*;而在泛指多方、多数间非对应(不规则或循环)关系时,一般只用 *one another*:

The girls and the boys avoided **each other**, refusing to dance and clustering shyly together with friends of their own sex.

(RWRT) 那些男孩子和女孩子们互相躲避,不肯跳舞,而是羞怯地和同性朋友凑在一起。

The host, together with his two sons, and all the guests dutifully shook **each other** by the hand. (Raymond) 主人携其二子和所有来客礼貌地相互握手。

In the stampede, the horses trampled **one another** to death.

(RWRT) (不说 *...trampled each other to death。) 惊逃之

中马匹互相践踏而死。

The wagons followed **one another** around the arena. (ib) (循环关系, 不说 *... followed one another down the road.) 马车相互衔接, 围着竞技场转圈。

What stirred him was the shame and horror which men and women could inflict upon **one another** in the name of money or patriotism or religion itself. (RWRT) 使他惊心的是男男女女都会在钱财驱使下, 或在爱国主义或者宗教本身的幌子下, 互相使别人遭受的那种耻辱和恐怖。

The translation of "Se Parler" is "to talk to **one another**", not "to talk to each other". (Swan) 法语"Se Parler"("大家交谈")译成英语要说"to talk to one another", 不说"to talk to each other"。

We all tried on **one another's** hats. (RWRT) 我们大家都来试戴别人的帽子。

4.11 分隔开的 each(one)...other (another)

连在一起的 each other(或 one another)都不能作主语,(包括从句主语、逻辑主语), 但 each 可和 other 分开, 作主语或主语的同位语, 这时 other 前要加定冠词 the:

We **each** know what **the other** thinks/how **the other** is getting along. (Jameson) (不说 * We know what each other thinks/how one another is getting along.) 我俩都知道对方在想什么, 过得怎么样。

We **each** thought **the other** was joking. (Wood) (不说 * We thought (that) each other was joking.) 我们俩都以为对方在开玩笑。

They **each** waited for **the other** to go first. (Wood) (不说 * They waited for each other to go first. 该说法中 the other 占了逻辑主语的位置。)他俩都等着对方先走。

They **each** blamed **the other**/They blamed each other. (CGEL) 他们彼此互相责怪。

Each willed **the other** to answer first; I gave way. (Snow) 谁都想让对方先回答,我让步了。

Each tried to cut down on waste more than **the other**. 各方都试图比对方更多地减少浪费。

one another 也有时分开使用,指两者或两者以上:

They talked **one** with **another**/They talked with one another. (CGEL) 他们彼此交谈着。

I've been busy with **one** thing or **another**. (ib) 我一直忙这忙那。

We overtook **one** car after **another**/the other. (ib) 我们超过了一辆又一辆汽车。

One is broken and **another** is lost. 一个坏了,另一个丢了。

One man's meat is **another**'s poison. (谚) 对一个来说是香肉,对另一个来说却是毒药。(利于甲者,未必利于乙。)

(the) one 也有时与 the other 搭配,表示“一个…另一个…”:

One of his eyes is better than **the other**. (CGEL) 他一只眼比另一只眼要好。

He saw two suspicious-looking men. (**The**) **One** went this way, **the other** that. (ib) 他见到两个看上去可疑的人。一个朝这边走来,另一个朝那边走去。

His hands lay **one** on top of **the other** as if chained. (RWRT) (不能说 * His hands lay on top of each other as if chained. 不合逻辑) 他的手一只放在另一只上,好像用链子拴住一样。

She stacked the books **one** on top of **the other**. (CGEL) 她把书

一本本擦起来。

I met a boy and his father yesterday; **the one** is fifteen, **the other** is fifty. (RHD) 昨天我遇到一个男孩和他父亲,一个 15 岁,另一个 50 岁。

Virtue and vice are before you; **the one** leads to happiness, **the other** to misery. (ib) 美德和邪恶在你面前等你,前者会把你引向幸福,后者会带你走向苦难。

Exercise 4

I. 改正下列句子中的错误:

1. I only need a shirt, not two.
2. Tom and her are conducting an experiment together.
3. You should avail of the books in the library.
4. Jane and Mary carried a small device with themselves.
5. My sister and me will go to a party tomorrow.

II. 在下列句中填入适当的反身代词,并指出是用于回指还是用来强调:

1. He has injured _____.
2. I _____ have not been there for more than five years.
3. The pupils _____ decorated the hall with flowers and garlands.
4. We protect _____ from the rain with an umbrella.
5. Mary _____ wrote and posted the letter.
6. I _____ was to blame.
7. He repaired his bike _____.

Ⅲ. 指出下列句中 **one** 的含义(确切数量、不确定的一个、某人、泛指任何人等):

1. **One** flower makes no garland.
2. I'll have to retire **one** day, but that's a long way.
3. **One** of the students has been to New York.
4. **One's** love affairs are **one's** own business.
5. **One** Smith has come to see you.
6. **One** day you'll be sorry you treated him so badly.

Ⅳ. 从括号中选择正确的答案:

1. Whenever (anyone, any one) was ill he installed (himself, him) as sick-nurse.
2. (Any one, Anyone) of us must not be left behind.
3. If you want to be (anybody, anyone), you must work hard.
4. He said he would marry me or (nobody, none).
5. "How many books have you got?" "(No one, None)."
6. "Who is in the room?" "(No one, None)."
7. They had apologized to him, but he was (no one, none) the less angry.
8. Has everybody got (her, their) books?

第五章 表空间、时间关系与所属关系的代词

5.1 指示代词指单数和复数

指示代词 **this/that** 指单数(可数事物单数或不可数事物);
these/those 指复数:

I don't like **this** coffee/furniture/table. 我不喜欢这种咖啡/家具/桌子。

I distrust **that** man/**those** men. 我不信任那个/那些人。

We have been close friends **this/these** 5 years. (RHD) 这五年中我们一直是亲密朋友。(用 **this** 时,把 5 years 当作一个整体)

These/Those (books) are worth reading. 这些/那些(书)值得阅读。

指示代词与 kind (sort) 搭配时可有几种形式,注意下面“这种书有用。”的译法:

This kind of book is useful. (标准正式说法,book 单数无冠词有概括意义)

Books of this kind are useful. (强调种类)

This kind of books is/are useful. (kind 作名词短语中心词时谓语句用单数;books 看作中心词时,谓语句用复数)

These kind of books are useful. (Jespersen;非正式,应避免)

以上例句都用单数 kind,指“一种”;指“多种”时才用复数 kinds,如“这些种类的书是有用的。”可这样译:

These kinds of books/book are useful. (book 单数无冠词,有概括意义)

Books of these kinds are useful. (强调特定几种)

单数指示代词 **this/that** 后有时跟表示单数意义的复数名词:

this woods 这一片树林 (**woods** 指一片树林)

that 20 pounds I had to borrow 我不得不借的那二十镑钱 (把 20 pounds 看作一个整体事物)。

5.2 空间上的远指与近指

1) 指示代词 **this/these** 用来指距说话人较近的人或物, 而 **that/those** 用来指距说话人较远的人或物。

i) 作定语:

Look at **that man!** (LDCE) 看那个人! (指人时不能说 * Look at that.)

Which do you like better, **this one** or **that one**? (RHD) 你更喜欢哪个, 这个还是那个?

This chair is more comfortable than **that/that chair/that one**. (CGEL) 这把椅子比那把椅子更舒适。

Those apples are sweeter than **these/these apples/these ones**. (ib) 那些苹果比这些苹果更甜。

ii) 作主语、宾语、表语、介词宾语等:

This is mine; that's yours. (JED) 这是我的, 那是你的。

The photographs I meant are **these here/those there**. (Alexander) 我指的是这儿的这些照片/那儿的那些照片。

Do they always dance like **that** in France? (LDCE) 在法国他们总那样跳舞吗?

2) **this/these** 和 **that/those** 在作名词性成分时, 一般指物, 不指人:

What's **this/that**? (Alexander) 这/那是什么?

What are **these/those**? (ib) 这些/那些是什么?

不说: * Who are these/those? (ib)(要说 these/those people); 不

说 * Is she going to marry that? (ib)(要说 that man)

但在下列情况下,名词性的 this/these 或 that/those 可以指人:

i) 电话用语中:

Who's **that**, please? (英)/Who's **this**, please? (美)(RHD) 请问哪位?

This is Sid. Is that Geoff? (CGEL) 我是斯德。你是杰夫吗?

ii) 介绍某人时或指着远处某人问话时:

This is Tom, here. / **That** is Tom, there. (EGS) 这儿这位是汤姆。/ 那儿那位是汤姆。

That is my friend Charlie Brown. (CGEL) 那个人是我的朋友查理·布朗。(指出人群中的某人)

“Who's **that** in the garden?” “**That's** my brother.” (JED) “花园里那人是谁?” “他是我哥哥。”(指着花园里的一个人)

iii) 指名单或照片时:

Are **these** the students who have registered? (ib) 这些是已注册的学生吗?

iv) those 带后置修饰语时:

Those (students) who failed the exam will have to take a make-up exam. (Compton) 那些考试不及格的(学生)要补考。

There are **those** who say (Some people say) she should never have been appointed. (ALD) 有些人说本来就不应当任命她。

Those present at the meeting included the mayor and mayoress and the local members of the Parliament. (Chambers) 在会场的那些人包括市长、市长夫人和当地的议会议员。(如用 these, 要说 These students/people..., students/people... 不能省略)

v) 对比的省略结构中:

Those councilors are in favor and **these** are against. (RWRT) 那些委员赞成,而这些委员却反对。

3) 有时 **that** 与 **this** 表示的距离远近只是说话者的一种“心理距离”,即对主观感觉较近的事物用 **this/these**,而主观感觉较远的用 **that/those**:

With **this** (Hereupon) he threw down his glass and left the table.

(RHD) 然后(这之后)他把杯子往桌上一扔,转身离去。

With **that** (Thereupon) he turned on his heel and fled. (ib) 而后

(那之后)他转身跑了。

It would be quicker if you did it like **this**. (Chamber) 你这样做的话,会快点儿。

It would be a shame to deceive your own people like **that**.

(Greene) 那样欺骗你自己的人民,是可耻的。

That is what I thought last year, **this** is what I think now. (Eckersley) 那是我去年的想法,而我现在是这么想的。

也常用主观感觉较远的 **that** 表示反对、厌恶等感情色彩;主观感觉较近的 **this** 表示赞成、羡慕等感情色彩(但并不总是如此,参见 5.10):

She's awful, **that** Mabel. (CGEL) 她真可怕,那个迈勃。

I hate **that** stinking rattling old bike of yours. (Priestley) 我不喜欢你那个叮铛乱响的自行车。

That brother of yours was drunk again last night. (Thomson) 你的那位哥哥昨晚又喝醉了。

I don't like **those** kind of paintings. (Chambers) 我不喜欢那种画。

This girl of mine wrote to say she was coming from Paris today.

(Priestley) 我的这位姑娘写信说她今天要从巴黎来这儿。

I like **these** books of yours. (Palmer) 我喜欢你的这些书。

指示代词有时可能只起强调作用而不带感情色彩:

Have you heard anything of **this/that** new novel of Carleton's?
(Yeats) 关于卡尔顿的这部/那部新小说你听到了什么议论
没有?

5.3 时间上的远指与近指

this/these 常用指较近的现在或将要到来的时间; **that/those** 用来指较远的过去的时间:

A friend of mine sent me some pictures of Athens **this** morning.

(Maugham) (**this/that** 等前不用 in) 今天上午我的一个朋友
给我寄来一些雅典的照片。

What are you doing **this** evening? (Swan) 今晚你要干什么?

Tell me now, **this** instant. (Alexander) 现在告诉我,就现在。

I didn't feel very well **that** week. (Swan) 那个星期我感觉不舒服。

The boy Robert entered college **that** autumn. (Lewis) 那年秋天
罗伯特这孩子上了大学。

These last few days I have been working particularly hard.

(Yeats) 最近这几天我工作特别努力。(包括现在时间在内的
近几天)

He is feeling optimistic **these** days. (Priestley) 这些天他感到很
乐观。

In **those** days (= at that time, then) he was very busy, but not
now. (LLCE) (**those** 前有介词 in) 那些日子他很忙,但现在
不忙。

因为 **this** 常用来指现在或将要到来的时间,而 **that** 指过去时

间,所以在即将进行某种示范动作时,用 *this*;在示范动作结束后用 *that*:

This is how you do it. (CGEL) 按下面方法来做。(示范动作前)

That's how you do it. (ib) 按上述方法去做。(示范动作后)

选用 *this* 还是 *that* 指时间,有时参照的只是说话者的“心理时间”:

Have you seen **this** report on smoking? (the one I have recently been thinking about) (CGEL) 你看过这份(我最近一直考虑的)关于吸烟的报告吗?

Have you seen **that** report on smoking? (the one I was looking at some time ago) (ib) 你看过那份(一段时间前我看过的)关于吸烟的报告吗?

5.4 语句中的前指与后指

1) 在语句中,常使用 *that*/*those* 前指上文提到的名词短语、从句、句子等:

I hear you disliked his latest novel. I read *his first novel*, and **that** was boring, too. (CGEL) 我听说你不喜欢他最近出的这本小说。我读过他的第一部小说,那本也枯燥乏味。

You go to *fresh places*. Describe **those**. You meet with *fresh people*. Describe **those**. 你去新的地方。描写那些地方。你遇到新的人,描写那些人。

Do you remember going to Norway? **That** was a good holiday. (ALD) 你记得挪威之行吗? 那次度假真不错。

I knew *I was useless, worthless, penniless*, and **that** until I had qualified myself to do something. (Shaw) 直到我有资格做些

事之前,我总认为我是个毫无用处、分文不值、一无所有之人。

Send her some flowers — that's the easiest thing to do. (ALD)
给她送些花——那是最容易做到的。

Many years ago their wives quarreled over some trivial matter, long forgotten. But one word led to another, and the quarrel developed into a permanent rupture between them. That's why the two men never visit each other's houses. (CGEL) 很多年之前,他们的妻子为一些已被忘却很长时间的琐事争吵起来。但你一言,我一语,争吵变成了永久的断交。那就是两人互不往来的原因。

this/these 也常用来前指,比 that/those 语气更强一点儿:

He asked for *his brown rain coat*, insisting that **this** was his usual coat during the winter months. (CGEL) 他要他的棕色雨衣,坚持说这是他冬季经常穿的雨衣。

The platforms extended to the depth of 100 feet under the sea. These alone took 16 months to build. 平台延伸到海下 100 英尺深处。单是这些平台就花了 16 个月才建成。

I heard *Friday's meeting has been cancelled*. If **this/that** is so, I shall protest strongly. (Close) 我听说星期五的会议取消了。如果这/那是真的,我强烈反对。

I had in mind *a canoe, such as the natives of those regions make of the trunk of a tree*. **This** I not only thought possible but easy. (Robinson Crusoe) 我想做一个独木舟,就是那些地区居民用树干做的那种。我不仅认为这是可能的,而且是容易的。

What must the spacecraft be like? When can it leave? Will it be on the right course? The computer answers all **these** questions. 宇宙飞船要像什么样? 它何时能起飞? 会不会运行

于正确的轨道上? 计算机回答所有这些问题。

在表类指时,一般用 **that** 不用 **this**:

You're an angel — **that** you are. 你是个天使(一样的人)。

this 可和 **that** 一起使用, **these** 可和 **those** 一起使用。 **this/these** 指较后提到的事物, **that/those** 指较前提到的事物:

Virtue and vice before you; **this** leads you to misery; **that** to peace. (RHD) 美德和罪恶摆在你面前。罪恶使你陷入痛苦,美德引你走进宁静。

Dogs are more faithful animals than cats; **these** attach themselves to places, and **those** to persons. 狗比猫是更忠实的动物。猫依附于(舒适的)地方,狗依附于人。

2) 在语句中,后指时一般用 **this/these**,常指后面即下文即将提出的句子:

Listen to **this**: *They've cancelled Friday's meeting.* (Close) 听着:他们已取消了星期五的会议。

This should interest you, if you're keen on boxing. *The world heavy weight championship is going to be held in Chicago next June*, so you should be able to watch it there live. (CGEL) 如果你喜欢拳击,这会使你感兴趣:明年六月芝加哥要举办世界重量级拳击锦标赛,所以你将能在现场看比赛。

These language options are open to our students: *Spanish, French, and German.* (CGEL) 学生可选择这些语言:西班牙语、法语和德语。

后指时,也偶尔用 **that**,语气强烈,常表示贬义的感情色彩:

What do you think of **that**? *Bob smashed up my car, and then expected me to pay for the repairs.* 你怎么看待这件事? 鲍勃撞坏了我的汽车,却想让我来掏修理费。

Is **that** funny? *To look for the existence of fish in the well!* 这岂

不可笑? 到井里头去找鱼!

3) *such* 也有时用来前指, 指代上文提到的性质或状态:

If officialdom makes mistakes, officialdom deserves to suffer.

Such, at least, was Mr. Boyd's opinion. (CGEL) (= *this/that*; *such* 更正式) 如果当官的犯错误, 当官的就应该吃些苦头。这至少是鲍德先生的看法。

Never call a man a thief till you can prove him such. (Watson)

直到能证明一个人是盗贼时, 才可称他为盗贼。

I may have hurt her feelings, but such was certainly not my intention. (ALD) 我可能伤害了她的感情, 但这当然不是故意的。

Outbreaks of small-arms fire along the frontier became more frequent in May, but hardly any such incidents were officially investigated. (CGEL) 五月份, 边界地区轻武器开火更加频繁, 对这样的事件官方几乎没有调查。

5.5 *that* 构成的惯用语

1) *that is* (to say) “就是说”、“具体地说”、“准确地说”, 用来对所说的进行补充说明。*that is* 可用在句尾:

John is a New Yorker; **that is**, he lives in New York. (DAI) 约翰是纽约人, 就是说, 他住在纽约。

“I think, finally, I shall go into the navy.” “You?” “If they'd have me, **that is**.” (DCIE) “最后, 我想我要参加海军。” “你?” “我是说, 如果他们要我。”

She's a housewife — when she's not teaching English, **that is**.

(ALD) 她是个家庭主妇——这是说在不当英语教员时。

He's a cutler — **that is to say**, a man who makes and repairs

knives and other cutting tools and instruments. 他是个刀匠,即制造和修理各种刀具的人。

It's now exactly twenty-eight minutes past four. **That is to say**, the doctor's been gone two hours and thirteen minutes. (Mansfield) 现在是4点28分,就是说,医生已走了2小时13分钟了。

2) that's that/that was that “再没什么可说/可做的事”(there's no more to be said or done),“情况就是如此”;“这就完了”。用来表示动作或事态发展的结束:

I won't marry Peter, and **that's that**. (Freeman) 我不想和彼得结婚,没什么可说的了。

He has said that we can't do it, so **that's that**. (Chambers) 他说我们不能做那件事,就是如此。

“The car has broken down.” “**That's that** then. We can't reach Glasgow tonight.” (ib) “汽车坏了。”“那就完了。我们今晚到不了格勒斯哥了。”

All you have to do is telephone him and tell him you can't come and **that's that**. 你所需要做的就是给他打电话告诉他你不能来了,这就完了。

If a student was bold enough to say anything different, his professor would settle the argument with a quotation from Aristotle: “The Master has spoken...” And **that was that**. 如果有学生胆敢提出异议,他的教授就会搬出亚里士多德来解决辩论:“大师曾经说过...”,这就完了。

3) that's all “只是...”,“只要...就行了”,“就这些”。用来表示情况的简单或限度:

“How are you feeling?” “Fine. A little tired, **that's all**.” (DCIE) “你感觉怎么样?” “很好,只是有点儿累。”

You don't have to wait for an answer. Just put the note in the letter-box, **that's all**. (ib) 你不必等答复, 只要把便条放进他家信箱就行了。

“You're not going to tell on me, Mr. Lampton?” “No, you fool. Just don't do it again, **that's all**.” (ib) “你不去告我的状吗, 兰波顿先生?” “不, 你这个傻瓜, 只要不再这么干就行了。”

4) for all (that) “尽管…” (= notwithstanding), 例如:

For all that, it was a good year. (RHD) 虽然如此, 那是不错的一年。

For all (that) you say, I still like her. (ib) 不管你怎么说, 我还是喜欢她。

He has great power and wealth, but is still unhappy **for all that**.

(ALD) 虽然他很有权势, 很富有, 但仍然很不快活。

5) at that “而且” (besides):

I made a mistake, and a very bad mistake **at that**. 我犯了个错误, 而且是个很糟糕的错误。

It's an idea, and a good one **at that**. (LDCE) 那是个主意, 而且是很不错的主意。

This seems to be full of fallacies, and dangerous fallacies **at that**.

(DCIE) 这似乎全属谬论, 并且都是危险的谬论。

at that 既可表示“尽管如此”, 还可表示“就此看来”:

Though perhaps too elaborate, it seemed like a good plan **at that**.

(RHD) 虽似过于细致, 看来那仍是个妥善计划。

She suggested we should bring the car, and it's not a bad idea **at that**. (LDEI) 她建议我们把车开来, 看来这是个好主意。

Let it go at that 和 leave it at that 表示“就这样算了”:

Let it go at that. (Watson) 就这样好了。

We'll never agree, so **let's leave it at that**. (ALD) 我们不会达成

一致意见,就到此为止吧。

6) that's (about) it “说对了”,“(任务)完成了”:

That's it. You've described exactly what I felt about the film. 对呀,你对这个电影的描述正是我对这个电影的感受。

“Confidence...” “And you have none?” “**That's about it.** I'm no good, doctor!” (ib) “信心...” “你一点儿都没有?” “是啊,我真差劲,大夫!”

She surveyed the cold supper she had prepared, decided that **that was it** and went out to get dressed before the guests came. (ib) 她检查了一下自己准备的冷晚餐,认为做好了,便走出厨房穿戴起来,准备迎接客人的光临。

5.6 物主代词的附加形式与绝对形式

物主代词的附加形式与绝对形式如下表:

词义类型	我的	你的	他/她/它的	我们的	你们的	他们的
附加形式	my	your	his/her/its	our	your	their
绝对形式	mine	yours	his/hers/its	ours	yours	theirs

1) 物主代词的附加形式都作定语

This is **my bike** and that is **his bike**. (CGEL) 这是我的自行车,那是他的自行车。[比较 This is Jack's bike and that is John's (bike).]

Open **your mouth** and put out **your tongue**. (Neal) 张开口,伸出舌头。

Do you mind **his speaking** first? (RHD) 你介意他先说吗?(接动名词)

物主代词有时可有几种不同意义, 需要从上下文中辨明所指, 如: Give me back **my photograph**. (CGEL) 该句中 my photograph 可解释为 the one I own 我拥有的那张照片; the one I took 我拍摄的那张照片; the one taken of me 别人给我拍的那张照片。

英语中, 物主代词的附加形式用得非常普遍, 而汉语的相似结构中却有时不用物主代词:

He stood at the door with **his** hat in **his** hand. (CGEL) 他站在门那儿, 手里拿着帽子。

Mary has broken **her** leg. (ib) 玛丽摔断了腿。

The chair has lost one of **its** legs. (Thorndike) 椅子掉了一条腿儿。

They have changed **their** minds again! 他们又改变主意了!

在宾语人称代词或反身代词后, 以介词短语表示动作加于那人身体某一部分时, 常用“the + 该部位”, 而不用物主代词:

She took me **by the hand**. (CGEL)(不说 * by my hand) 她拉着我的手。(比较宾语不指人的 She throws the ball with her left hand. 她用左手投球。)

Mary banged herself **on the forehead**. (ib)(不说 * on her forehead) 玛丽撞伤了自己的前额。

Don't keep digging me **in the ribs**. (ib)(不说 * in my ribs) 别老是用胳膊肘碰我的肋骨。

有些惯用语中用“of + 宾格代词”而不用“物主代词的附加形式 + 名词”:

I cannot **for the life of me** understand why he did it. (MED)(不说 * for my life) 我怎么也不明白他为什么做那件事。

On the surface of it, it seems a good idea. (CGEL)(不说 * on its surface) 表面看来, 那是个好主意。

I don't trust **the likes of him**. (CGEL)(不说 * his likes) 我不信

任他这类人。[比较 We shall not see **his** like again. (Thorndike) 我们将不会再见到他那样的人。]

That motorbike will be **the death of you**. (ALD)(不说 * your death) 那辆摩托车会使你送命。

Ah, you always **make fun of me**. (Greene)(不说 * make my fun) 啊! 你总是嘲笑我。

2) 物主代词的绝对形式可作主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语等

i) 主语:

That isn't my own car; **mine** is being repaired. (LDCE) (= my car) 那不是我自己的汽车,我的正在修理。

Her daughter is rather stupid, but both of **yours** are very clever. (ib) (= your daughters) 她的女儿很笨,但你的两个女儿都很聪明。

ii) 动词宾语:

If you can't afford a sleeping bag, why not borrow **his**/somebody else's? (CGEL) (= his sleeping bag) 如果你买不起睡袋,为何不借他的/别人的?

We'll have to separate **his** from **yours**. (ALD) 我们要把他的和你的分开。

iii) 介词宾语:

Today we went in our car; tomorrow we are going in **theirs**. (Eckersley) (= their car) 今天我们坐我们的车去,明天我们坐他们的车去。

iv) 表语:

What's **yours** is **mine**, and what's **mine** is my own. (谚) 你的是我的,我的是我自己的。

Those books are **theirs**, not **mine**. (Thorndike) 那些书是他们的,不是我的。(= their books, my books)

物主代词的绝对形式 *its* 很少使用,一般只用于平行结构中:
History has its lessons and fiction **its**. (CGEL) 历史给人提供特定的教训,小说也提供其特定教训。

She knew the accident was either her husband's fault or the car's.
It turned out to be not his but **its**. (ib) 她知道这事故或是她丈夫的过错或是汽车的毛病引起的。最后证明不是她丈夫的过错造成了事故,而是汽车的毛病。

绝对形式 *yours* 写在书信末尾,具有特殊的意义:

Write "**yours** faithfully" or "**yours** truly" to strangers, "**yours** sincerely" to people you have met, and "*yours*" or "*yours* ever" to friends. (LDCE) 对陌生人写 "*yours* faithfully" 或 "*yours* truly",对相识的人写 "*yours* sincerely",对朋友写 "*yours*" 或 "*yours* ever"。

mine 和 *yours* 有时用来表示“我一家人”和“你一家人”:

My best wishes to you and *yours* from me and **mine**. (Eckersley)
我和我们全家对你和你们全家表示最美好的祝愿。

Best wishes for you and **yours**. (Zandvoort) 对你和你们全家人表示最美好的祝愿。

5.7 强调物主代词 **own**

own 经常用在物主代词的附加形式后,对物主代词起强调作用:

This book doesn't belong to the library—it's my **own** copy.
(CGEL) 这本书不是图书馆的,是我自己的。

I saw it with my **own** eyes. 我亲眼看到的。

We want to live our **own** lives. (RHD) 我们想过我们自己安排的生活。

His **own** brother testified against him. (Halsey) 他自己的哥哥作

证反对他。

Every cock crows on its **own** dunghill. (谚)啼叫在自家脏土堆上,大公鸡个个得意洋洋。

own 之后有时可以没有名词:

Floyd sometimes plays other musicians' arrangements, but his **own** are much better. (CGEL) (省略了 arrangements) 弗洛伊德有时演奏其他乐师的曲目,但演奏他自己的要好得多。

The fruit has a flavor all its **own**. (Jones) 这水果有自己独特的味道。

I only borrowed it, and it's not my **own**. (LDCE) (不说 * my own one; one 不用在 own 之后) 我只是借的,那不是我的。

My little cat is very clever. It knows the basket under the table is its **own**. (Swan) (不能说 * ... is its. its 作为绝对形式很少使用) 我的那只小猫很聪明,它知道桌下的篮子是它的。

own 之前可用 very 来加强语气:

Do you like this? It's my **very own** recipe. (CGEL) (a recipe made up myself) 你喜欢吗? 那是我自己的配方。

own 可用在 of 之后:

I'd love to have a home **of my (very) own**. (CGEL) 我想有自己的家。

We're resigning from the firm, and starting a business **of our (very) own**. (ib) 我们正要从那个公司辞职下来,创办自己的企业。

No doubt that the region had a sombre beauty of its **own**. (Priestley) 毫无疑问,这个地区有它自己的一种忧郁美。

own 不与物主代词绝对形式连用,如不说 * mine own/yours own 等;也不与不定冠词连用,如不说 * It's nice if a child can have an own room. (Swan) (要说 a room of his own)

使用 own 有时能避免歧义：

Sam cooks his **own** dinner every evening. (... cooks dinner for himself) (CGEL) 萨姆每天晚上自己做(自己的)饭。(如果不用 own, his 可能指 Sam 也可能指另一个人)

The Housing Associations are encouraging people to buy their **own** houses. (ib)(their 指 people; 如果不用 own, 则 their 既可指 people 也可指 the Housing Associations) 房产协会正鼓励人们买下他们自己的房子。

5.8 物主代词/sb's 与 of 短语所表的几种关系

1) 物主代词/sb's 与 of 短语都可表示所有、主谓、动宾关系
物主代词/sb's 表示所有关系：

His/Jack's hat is the brown one. (RHD) 他的/杰克的帽子是那顶褐色的。

The children leave **their coats** in the cloakroom. (Neal) 孩子们把大衣放在衣帽间里。

We're studying Robert **Burns'/ his** poems. (Crowell) 我们正学习罗伯特·彭斯的诗。

James exchanged **his hat** for **John's**. (Carver) 詹姆斯用自己的帽子换约翰的帽子。

of 短语表示所有关系：

I'm an old friend **of her mother**. (Shaw) 我是她母亲的一个老朋友。

The funnel **of the ship** is red. (CGEL) 船的烟囱是红的。

It's the custom **of the country**. (Sinclair) 那是该国的风俗。

We must drink the health **of the bride**. (Du Maurier) 我们要为新娘的健康干杯。

物主代词/sb's 表示主谓关系:

The family are very pleased about the news of **William's success**.

(ib) (William succeeded.) 听到威廉成功的消息,全家很高兴。

Her retort left me with nothing to say. (She retorted.) 她的反驳使我无话可说。

of 短语表示主谓关系:

We are studying the decline **of ancient Rome**. (FWF) (Ancient Rome declined.) 我们正研究古罗马的衰落原因。

The room is for the use **of teachers**. (Palmer) (Teachers use the room.) 这房间是供老师们用的。

物主代词/sb's 表示动宾关系:

The play ends with **Hamlet's/his murder**. (Crowell) (... murdered Hamlet/him.) 这出戏以哈姆雷特 / 他被害结束。

of 短语表示动宾关系:

It was sheer waste **of time**. (Maugham) (... wasted time.) 那完全是浪费时间。

She listened to his description **of the stars and the mountains**. (Wells) (He described the stars and the mountains.) 她听着他对星星和山脉的描述。

The writing **of the letter** took me three hours. (Palmer) (I wrote the letter.) 写这封信花了我三个小时。(与动名词构成动宾关系)

在以上三种关系中,物主代词的结构最常用来顶替 of 短语表示所有和主谓关系,动宾关系多留给 of 短语表示:

The documents are now in **my solicitor's possession/in the possession of my solicitor**. (Wood) 这些文件现由我的律师掌握。(所有)

My solicitor is now **in possession of the documents**. (ib)(动宾; 不说 * in the documents' possession)我的律师现在已掌握了这些文件。

The swallow's feeding of her young is wonderful. (Schibsbye) ('s 表主谓关系, of 短语表动宾关系)燕子喂幼雏的情景真是美妙。

Man's success on earth is largely due to **his control of energy**. (物主代词表主谓关系, of 短语表动宾关系)人类在地球上的成功的主要原因是**对能量的主宰**。

One of man's greatest problems has been made by **his own use of fuels** to supply energy for industry and automobiles. (ib)人类面临的**最大问题之一**就是使用燃料给工业和汽车供应能源。

He did that for **the love of his wife**. (Eckersley)(不说 * for his wife's love)他这样做是为了**对妻子的爱**。

所有格表动宾关系常见于与某些特定名词的搭配,如: the prisoner's release, the murderer's imprisonment 等,也见于特定的上下文:

He is always singing **the King's praise**. (Eckersley) (He praises the King.) 他总是**为国王唱赞歌**。

He was pleased by **the King's praise**. (ib) (The king praised him.) 他受到**国王的赞扬**,感到很高兴。

Three members of the Air Force were charged with **Beaumont's murder/with the murder of Beaumont**. (Schibsbye) 三名空军人员被控**共同谋杀波蒙特**。

His response to the reprimand seemed a major reason for **his dismissal**. (CGEL) 他对受到的指责所作出的反应似乎是他被**辞退的主要原因**。

In 1981, when I named Gerald Greenwald vice-chairman of

Chrysler, I learned that **his appointment** was unprecedented.
1981年,我任命格罗德格林瓦尔德为克莱斯勒公司副董事长时,知道这项任命是没有前例的。

注意比较下面例句的差别:

He was **Jespersen's** student/was a student of **Jespersen's** /one of Jespersen's students. (CGEL) ('s 表所属)他是叶斯帕森的(一个)学生。

He is a student **of Jespersen**. (ib) (of 表动宾)他是研究叶斯帕森的一个学者。

an old sailor's story ('s 表主谓) 一个老水手讲的故事

the story **of an old sailor** (of 短语表动宾) 讲述(关于)一个老水手的故事

2) 表示同位关系只能用 of 结构

The city of Newcastle lies at the mouth of the Newcastle River.
(Sinclair) 纽卡斯尔市位于纽卡斯尔河河口。

He was at **the town of Holbon**, thirty miles away. (ib) 他当时在三十英里之外的霍尔本镇。

The problem of distinguishing between objects of different shapes by a computer has been partially solved and published. 用电脑辨别不同形状物体的问题已部分地得到解决而且被发表了。

还有这样一种特殊的修饰关系结构:名词 1 + of + a + 名词 2, 义为“像名词 1 一样的名词 2”。其中名词 1 必须是“冠词或属性代词 + 单数可数名词”:

an angel of a girl (CGEL) 像天使一样的姑娘

this jewel of an island (ib) 这个像宝石一样的岛屿

some fool of a man (LDCE) 一个傻瓜

a/the/this/that fool of a policeman (ib) 一个/这个/那个傻瓜警察

Ha ! Ha! What a **devil of a name!** (Shaw) 哈哈! 多古怪的名字呀!

上述修饰结构中,of 前后的名词还可各有修饰语:

this **crescent-shaped jewel of a South Sea island** (CGEL) 这个新月形的宝石一般的南太平洋岛屿

5.9 双重所有关系 of sb's / 物主代词 mine 等 (my own 等)

- He is a friend of my brother's. (RWRT) 他是我哥哥的一个朋友。这种“双重所有关系”结构,比单说 He is a friend of my brother 更为普通。

双重所有关系是 of 结构和所有格或物主代词的结合(如 a friend of Jim's/mine),常用来表示“不确指”或“听者未知”,中心词前常伴有 a, any, some, no 等冠词、属性代词:

Have you got a **car of your own?** (CGEL) 你有自己的汽车吗?

An old friend of mine has just had a child. (Snow) (听者未知)
我的一个老朋友刚生了小孩。

Any daughter of Mrs. Brown's is welcome. (CGEL) 布朗夫人的任何一个女儿都是受欢迎的。

He took **some remarks of Laura's** to mean that she lived at the villa. (Schibsbye) 他认为劳拉的某些话意指她就住在那个别墅中。

He is **no friend of mine.** (Alexander) 他根本不是我的朋友。

What friend of your father's? (Schibsbye) 你父亲的什么朋友?

Which novel of Dickens'? 狄更斯的哪部小说?

two novels of Dickens' 狄更斯的两部小说

从上面例句中看出,双重结构中,of 后的名词必须确指某人,如

不说 * an opera of a composer's, * a funnel of the ship's (CGEL); of 前的中心词不能是专有名词,如不说 * Mary of Mrs. Brown's (CGEL),也不说 * Mary of Mrs. Brown。

双重所有关系也有时表示“确指已知”,这时中心词前用 this/these 或 that/those 来修饰,有时伴有感情色彩:

I tell you **that precious brother of yours** was drunk. (London) 我告诉你,你那宝贝哥哥喝醉了。

Have you heard anything of **this new novel of Carlston's**? (Yeats) 关于卡尔斯顿的这本新小说你听说什么了吗?

Have you seen **those sonnets of Hawkshaw's**? (Shaw) 你见过霍克肖的那些十四行诗吗?

除非该双重所有结构带有后位定语时,其中心词不能带定冠词 the:不说 * **The daughter of Mrs. Brown's** has arrived. (CGEL) 可说 **That/The friend of my father's who is going abroad!** (Schibsbye) 就是我父亲那位要出国的朋友啊!

注意下面表达方式的差别:

Mrs. Brown's daughter (CGEL)(暗示其惟一女儿)

Mrs. Brown's daughter Mary (ib)(可能是惟一女儿,也可能不是)

Mary, (the) daughter of Mrs. Brown (ib)(可能是惟一女儿,也可能不是)

Mary, daughter of Mrs. Brown's (ib) (至少两个女儿之一)

a picture of the Queen's (Nesfield) 女王(收藏或所画)的一幅画; a picture of the Queen 一张画女王的画(picture 属非正规艺术品; 而 portrait 或 painting 属正规艺术作品)

a portrait of the King's(ib) 国王收藏的一幅绘画; a portrait of the King 一幅国王的肖像

a bust of Cicero's (井上) 西塞罗拥有的半身塑像之一; a bust of Cicero 西塞罗的半身塑像(Cicero 是古罗马政治家)

my sister's painting (CGEL) (表所属或主谓关系) 我姐姐收藏
(或所画)的绘画

a painting of my sister (ib) 一幅(画)我姐姐的画像

a painting by my sister (ib) 一幅我姐姐画的画像

a painting of my sister by my brother (ib) 由我哥哥画的我姐姐
的肖像

对比起来, of somebody's 和“of + mine 等物主代词的绝对形式”指所属的或所处置的特殊、具体的事物; 而“名词 + of somebody”和“my 等物主代词 + 名词”可表抽象性质:

“Is she a relative **of your mother's**?” “No, she isn't really a relative **of my mother**, though she claims to be a distant niece **of hers**.” (Schwann) “她是你母亲的一个亲戚(表所属)吗?” “不,她并不是我母亲的真正亲戚(表性质、范畴),尽管她声称是我母亲的一个远房外甥女(表所属)。”

Herr Henlein is being used to make Czecho-Slovakia a vassal **of Germany**. If Czecho-Slovakia becomes a vassal **of Germany's**, Germany will be in a position of enormous strength. (Schibsbye) 汉莱恩先生正在被利用把捷克斯洛伐克变成德国的附庸(指范畴)。如果捷克斯洛伐克真成为德国的一个附庸(指一个特殊个体),那时德国将处于极其强大的地位。

He is **my friend**. (Alexander) (可指性质、抽象关系) 他是我的朋友。

He is **a friend of mine**. (ib) (指所属的一个个体) 他是我的一个朋友(我的朋友不止一个)。

Exercise 5

I. 用指示代词填空:

1. _____ who live in glass house shouldn't throw stones.

2. _____ man over there is my brother.
3. I don't like that apple. I like _____ one.
4. How have you been _____ days?
5. We never found out what they were and I'm still in ignorance to _____ day.
6. Look at the man in the garden. _____ is my father.
7. _____ present at the meeting included the mayor and may-
oress and the local members of Parliament.

II. 用代词的附加形式或绝对形式填空：

1. I have just had _____ hair cut. Have the other pupils had
_____ cut yet?
2. My sister and I were taking _____ usual route to school
when we met a teacher of _____. She gave us a lift in
_____ car.
3. I used the typewriter without realizing that it was _____.
He is going to be mad when he finds out about it.
4. She had blisters on _____ feet and refused to walk any far-
ther. In the end, we decided to pitch _____ camp on that
spot.
5. _____ mother scolded me for getting _____ clothes
dirty. She warned me that she would make me wash _____
own clothes.
6. You must not take the law into _____ own hands. You
must leave that matter to the police, for it is _____ duty to
maintain peace and order.
7. They asked me for _____ address when I asked them for
_____. I wrote down _____ on a piece of paper while

- they wrote down _____ in _____ diary.
8. Fanny is driving _____ father's car because _____ is in the repair-shop. _____ father has told her that she can use _____ in the meantime.

Ⅲ. 从括号中选择正确的答案:

1. (This, These) water is too cold.
2. Is she going to marry (that, that man)?
3. All of (these, this) is mine.
4. (These, This) woods of larches is very beautiful.
5. (That, Those) 40 pounds is far from enough.
6. I have to read all (these, this) books for my course.
7. This chair is too low. I'll sit in (that, this).

Ⅳ. 指出下列句中黑体字 **this** 和 **that** 所指的是上文还是下文的什么内容:

1. Our car broke down on the way to the airport. **This** made us late for the plane.
2. He said I was not a good wife. Wasn't **that** a horrible thing to say?
3. I want to know **this**: Has this Mrs. Jones been here the whole morning?
4. We see him when he comes to town, but **that** isn't often.

Ⅴ. 把下列句子翻译成英语。注意指示代词与表“双重所有关系”结构的配合使用:

1. 我的这个女儿写信说,她今天从巴黎回来。
2. 你的那辆汽车总是出毛病。

3. 你的那个哥哥昨晚又喝醉了。
4. 我们两个都不喜欢她的那些作品。
5. 看看你那双脏手。

第六章 表数量与确定/不确定关系的代词

6.1 many/much 与 a good number/a great deal of, a lot of, plenty of 等

1) many/much

指量代词 many 指可数事物, much 指不可数事物。二者主要用在疑问句、否定句及条件句中,尤其是在作定语时:

How **many** cigarettes a day do you smoke? (Eckersley) 你每天吸多少支香烟?

How **much** rent do you pay? (Dreiser) 你付多少房租?

Do you know **many** people in London? (Eckersley) 在伦敦你认识很多人吗?

I don't suppose you have **much** time. (Greene) 我认为你没有很多时间。

If there's **much** rain, the ground will be flooded. (Neal) 如果雨量很大,地面就会被淹没。

以下三种情况中,肯定句也常使用 many/much:

i) 在与程度或方式副词 too, so, as 等连用时,例如:

Three are **too many** to keep a secret and too few to be merry.
(谚) 仨人嫌太多,秘密难再保;仨人嫌太少,玩也不热闹。

You're asking **too much**. (Snow) 你要求的过多。

He ate three and said he could eat **as many** again (= three more).

(ib) 他吃了三个后,说还能再吃三个。

She read **as much** as she could. (Thomson) 她尽可能大量阅读。

I have **so much** in common with Charice. (Du Maurier) 我和查瑞丝有那么多共同之处。

I have only done **this/that much** up to now. (Palmer) (较正式用 so much) 到目前为止我只做了这么/那么多。

ii) 在修饰主语或本身作主语(尤其主语 + of)时,例如:

Many hands make light work. (谚) 人多好干活。

Much time would be saved if you planned your work properly. (Eckersley) 如果你合适地安排工作,可以省出很多时间来。

Many of us will live to see great changes. (LLCE) 我们中很多人会活着见到所发生的巨大变化。

Much of what he said is true. (Eckersley) 他说的大部分是真实的。

iii) 在十分正式的文体中,例如:

He has seen **many** plays during his stay in London. (RWRT) 他呆在伦敦期间,看过很多话剧。

、 She has spent **much** time here. (ib) 她在这儿度过了很多时光。

His faults were **many/few**. (CGEL) 他的缺点很多/很少。

2) a good/great many, a great/good deal 等

a good/great many, a good/large/great number of 等指可数事物, a great/good deal 指不可数事物, a lot of/lots of, plenty of 兼用于指可数或不可数事物。这些短语常用在肯定句中:

On our way to the hotel, I asked him **a good many** questions.

(Priestley) 在去旅馆的路上,我问他很多问题。

He has given me **a great deal of** help. (Yeats) 他给我大量帮助。

There were **a large/good/great number of** people there. (Palmer) 那儿有很多人。

You have **a lot of** time but I haven't much (time). (Thomson) 你有很多时间,但我没有。

He gets **a lot of** letters but she doesn't get many (letters). (ib)

他收到很多信,但她收到的信却不很多。

He's got **plenty of** men friends, but he doesn't know many girls.

(Swan) 他有很多男性朋友,但他认识的姑娘并不很多。

She had **plenty of** imagination. (Shaw) 她有丰富的想象力。

6.2 more/most 作代词

1) more 为指量代词 many/much 的比较级,兼有形容词性和名词性用法,表示“较多,更多”:

形容词性用法:

Alexander wept because there were no **more** worlds to conquer.

(马其顿国王) 亚历山大大帝哭了,因为没有更多的地域可去征服。

Take **more** time. 更从容一些。

There is **more** heart in humour, and **more** head in wit. 幽默中有更多的情感,机敏中有更多的智慧。

The medical examination was so cursory. If there was **more** wrong with anybody than met the eye, it was not likely to be spotted. 身体检查太粗略了。如果谁有不太明显的病症,那是不大可能发现的。

A dozen is (two) **more** than ten. (more 为表语; two 为度量状语) 一打比十个多(两个)。

Kind hearts are **more** than coronets. (谚) 善良的心地胜过高贵的冠冕。

名词性用法:

Instead of fewer accidents there are **more**. 事故不是减少了,而是增多了。

There is **more** to life than work. 生活拥有更为丰富的内涵, 不仅仅是工作。

More is meant than meets the ear. 这话暗含言外之意。

More know Tom Fool than Tom Fool knows. (谚) 傻瓜汤姆并不认识好多人, 而是有更多的人认识他。

More are drowned in the beaker than in the sea. (谚) 死于酒杯的多过死于大海的。

I hope to see **more** of you/**more** of the world. (of 后接名词时多带定冠词) 我希望更常见到你/更多地见见世面。

They worship a dozen gods and **more**/worship more than a dozen gods. (不说 * a dozen and more gods; 较非正式语可说 over a dozen gods) 他们敬拜十好几位天神。(a dozen gods or more 指“至少十二位天神”; a dozen gods more/a dozen more gods 指“另外十二位天神”)

more 还可表示“另外的(人、事物、数量)”:

One **more** word and I'll send you out of the room. 你再说一句, 我就让你滚出这个房间。

Are there **many** more? /Is there much **more**? 还有很多吗? (可数或不可数事物)

We drank **more** wine/**more of** the wine you bought. 我们又喝了些葡萄酒/你买来的葡萄酒。

More on this topic later. 这个问题以后再讲。

2) most 作为指量代词 many/much 的最高级, 也兼有形容词性和名词性的用法, 表示“最多的”:

The busiest men have the **most** leisure. (谚) 最忙的人有最多的空闲。

Least talk, **most** work. (谚) 少说话多做事。

A has a large number of books, B has more (books) and C has

most (books). (ALD) A的书很多, B的书更多, C的书最多。

This is the **most** (that) I can do. (Palmer) 我最多就能做这些。

Give the winner the **most**. (FWF) 最大一部分给获胜者。

most 也有时不带冠词, 表示“大多数, 大部分”:

The tree had shed **most** of its yellow blossoms. (Greene) 那颗树上的黄花大多已经落了。(of 后加名词时要有物主代词、定冠词等限定词)

A few people were killed in the fire, but **most** were saved. (LDCE) 一些人被大火烧死了, 但大多数还是得救了。

Most people like watching TV. 多数人爱看电视。

She is out **most** of the time. (Mansfield) (**most** 构成的词组作状语) 她大部分时间不在家。

6.3 much 兼作副词

1) 指量代词 **much** 兼作度量副词修饰动词、形容词和副词的比较级/最高级、介词短语和名词短语等:

作度量副词修饰动词:

He worried **much** about his failure to find work. (NDEC) 他非常担心找不到工作。

They feared that the visitors would excite the patient too **much**. 他们恐怕那些看望的人会使病人过于激动。

I don't much like the idea/don't like the idea **much**. (LDCE) 我不太喜欢那个主意。

much 在表示量的意义时, 通常仅用于否定句和疑问句, 且只位于句末:

I don't drive my father's car (very) **much**. 我不经常开我父亲的车。

Do you see him (very) **much**? 你经常见他吗?

在肯定句中表相应大量的意义时用 a lot, a great deal 等:

I drive (it) **a lot**. 我经常开(那辆车)。

She travels **a great deal**. (Halsey) 她经常去旅游。

作度量副词而修饰比较级/最高级(不能用 very):

This book is **much**(far) more interesting than that. (RHD) (不说 * very more interesting) 这本书比那本书有趣很多。

My boy-friend is **much** older than me. (Swan) (不说 * very older) 我的男朋友比我大得多。

You must work **much** faster. (ALD) 你的工作进度必须快些。

This is **much**/by far the best. (ib) 这个最好不过。

I never even spoke to the man, **much** less insulted him. (DAI) 我连话都没和这个人说过,更谈不上侮辱他了。

It's difficult to understand him, **much** more his wife. 理解他难,理解他妻子更难。

作度量副词修饰介词短语:

Much to his surprise he found his dog died. (NDEC) 使他大吃一惊的是,他发现他的狗死了。

These are **much** of a size. (RHD) 这些差不多同样大小。

He is **much** in love. (Schibsbye) 他正在热恋中。

The Danish invasion was **much** like the invasion of the Saxon themselves. (ib) (也可用 very) 丹麦人入侵英国和(原来那些已成为英国本土民族的)撒克逊人自己入侵英国是非常相似的。

作度量副词修饰名词短语:

She was very much a lady. (Evans) 她很有贵夫人风度。

2) much 作副词修饰 rather, too 及代词 the same 等:

I'd **much** rather (more willingly) not (go). (LDCE) (去与不去)

相比) 我很想不去。

You're **much**/far too nice. (Swan) 你太好了。

The patient's condition is **much** the same. (ALD) 病人情况差不多还是那样。

I've heard Hubert talk in **much** the same way about it. (Galsworthy) 我听过胡伯特以同样的方式谈论此事。

3) much/very much 作副词修饰保留动词运动意义的分词:

He was **very much** annoyed by the interruption. (Flower) 他被打断, 感到很烦恼。[用作形容词的表静态意义的分词由 very 来修饰: His tone was very annoyed. (ib) 他的语气很烦恼。]

When Victoria crossed the frontier, she was **much** excited. (Schibsbye) 维多利亚越过边境时感到非常激动。[比较 She is very excited. (RHD) 她心情激动。]

You could not imagine how **much** he was surprised at hearing the news. (RHD) 你想不到他听到这消息时是多么惊讶。[比较 There was a very surprised look on her face. (Schibsbye) 她脸上有种很惊奇的神色。]

Attic taste is **much** celebrated by poets. (Flower) 古雅典韵味被诗人们大加颂扬。[比较 We were all very shocked by the news about Tony. (Swan) 有关托尼的消息使我们全都非常震惊。非人施动者 by something 前既可用 much 也可用 very, 而指人施动者 by somebody 前只可用 much, 如... much celebrated by poets.]

(This is) a book interesting me **very much**. (RHD) (这是)一本使我很感兴趣的书。[比较 I'm **very interested** in the subject. (Schibsbye) 我对这个科目非常感兴趣。]

4) much/very much 用来修饰以 a-开头的形容词(非正式用语中, 有些以 a-开头的形容词也可用 very 修饰):

She was **much**/very afraid of something. (RHD) 她当时对一件事非常害怕。

He is (very) **much** ashamed of it. (ib) 为这他很羞愧。

His two daughters are very (**much**) alike. (Swan) 他的两个女儿非常相像。

Although old, he is still very **much** alive. (LDCE) 他虽然已经老了,仍很活跃。

其他个别形容词也用 much 来修饰:

Nobody expects that the far side of the moon is **much different** from that which is visible. (Schibsbye) (也可用 very) 没人认为月球的那一面会和看得见的这一面有很大差别。

6.4 more, most 兼作副词

1) more, most 分别构成形容词和副词的比较级与最高级:

His illness was (much) **more** serious than the doctor first thought. (LDCE) 他的病情比医生开始想的要严重(得多)。

She was the **more** promising worker of the two. (Priestley) 她是两个工作人员中更有前途的一个。

I asked him if he could explain the matter (rather) **more** simply. (LDCE) 我问他是否能更简单地来解释这件事。

What time would be **most** convenient for me to call again? (Shaw) 我何时再来访最合适?

One of the persons whom Lanny saw **most** frequently was George. (Sinclair) 这些人中,兰妮最频繁见到的一个是乔治。

以 a-开头的形容词和分词形容词通常只用 more/most 而不用 -er/est 形式构成比较级或最高级:

afraid — more afraid — most afraid

worried — more worried — most worried

以-el, -ow 结尾的形容词及某些其他形容词的比较级/最高级形式既可加-er/est 构成也可用 more/most 构成:

able — abler/more able, ablest/most able

narrow — narrower/more narrow, narrowest/most narrow

cruel — crueller/more cruel, cruellest/most cruel

多个形容词并列时,即使是单音节词也可用 more/most:

more kind and gentle/kinder and gentler

most kind and gentle/kindest and gentlest.

more/most 不能与-er/est 同时使用,如不能说 * more safer 等。

2) more 作为度量副词 much 的比较级可修饰动词、分词、介词短语等,意为“比…多/甚”:

He smokes to excess/too much/**more** than is good for him. 他吸烟过量/太多/太多而对身体不利。

I enjoy the theater very much — **more** than the cinema. 我爱看戏剧胜过看电影。

The tongue wounds **more** than a lance. (谚) 恶语伤人,甚于刀枪。

I was **more** in doubt than any of them. (RHD) 我比他们中的任何一个人更持怀疑态度。

more... than... 可表示对同一事物不同侧面的比较(这时 more 不能换成-er 形式):

He is **more** of a fool **than** a knave. /He is **more** fool than **knave**. /

He isn't so much of a knave. 与其说他是恶棍,不如说他是傻瓜。/他还不是个十足的恶棍。

She's **more** mother **than** wife. 她虽是妻子,却更像母亲。

It is even **more** a poem **than** a picture. 这幅画俨然是一首诗。

He is **more** good than **bad**. (不说 * He is better than bad.) 他好

的方面多于坏的方面。

I wouldn't call him gruff — he's **more** sad **than** gruff. (RWRT)
(不说 *He's sadder than gruff.) 我不说他不友好 —— 与其说他不友好,还不如说他更忧心忡忡。

3) more 表示“另外、再、而且”之意:

Let's talk **more** another time. 我们下次再谈吧。

We drove dozens of miles **more** after sunset. 日落后我们又驱车前行数十英里。

It's foolish, and, **more**, it's wrong. (... and moreover/and more than that...) 那是愚蠢的,并且是错误的。

Say it once/twice **more**. 再说一遍/两遍。

Never **more** shall I see her. 我再也见不到她了。

4) most 作为副词 much 的最高级常来修饰动词,表最高程度:

Among them, Martin **most** like Cliff Clawson. (Lewis) 在他们之中,马丁最喜欢克里夫·克劳森。

I suffered **most** from lack of rest. (Davies) 我因缺乏休息而感到很难受。

Those who work (the) **most** often get paid (the) least. (ALD)
干活最多的人常常得到的报酬最少。

most 也可用作强化词,表很高程度,常修饰形容词/副词,意为“非常”:

His argument was **most** convincing. (RHD) 他的议论非常令人信服。

Whatever happens, I shall **most** certainly attend the meeting.
(LDCE) 无论发生什么事,我都肯定参加会议。

He greeted me **most** cordially. (Dreiser) 他非常热情地和我打招呼。

It is a **most** joyful occasion. (Wilde) 那是个非常欢快的场合。

You're very helpful and **most** kind. (CGEL) (不说 * kindest)
你对人大有帮助,而且心地非常善良。

I find this whole situation puzzling and **most** odd. (不说 * odd-
est) 我发现全部事态都令人迷惑不解,极为离奇古怪。

如果在修饰形容词或副词时 **most** 前面不带冠词,则 **most** 有时可能会产生歧义:既可理解为最高级的组成部分,也可理解为修饰语。如果改用 **very** 则可避免。

Della is **most** efficient. (CGEL) 达拉的效率非常高。

most 前若带有定冠词,则 **most** 为最高级的组成部分;若带不定冠词,则 **most** 为修饰语:

This is **the most** difficult of the three. (Palmer) 这是三个之中最困难的一个。

Mr. Gow is **a most** remarkable man. (Cronin) 高先生是个非常出色的人。

副词 **most** 要与 **mostly** 区分开。**mostly** 意为“差不多都是 (almost all), 通常 (generally)”,用来表示“量”而不是“程度”:

The guests are **mostly** friends of the bride. (FWF) 这些客人差不多都是新娘的朋友。

The drink was **mostly** lemonade. (ALD) 那饮料的主要成分是柠檬汁。

We're **mostly** out on Sundays. (ib) 大多数情况下,我们星期日不在家。

6.5 each 与 every 的比较

each 是形容词性兼名词性代词 (属性代词兼本体代词),指两个以上相对独立,有所区别的同类个别事物。**every** 只是形容词性代词 (属性代词),指三个以上皆属同一情况的个别事物。**each** 与 **every** 的

具体差别如下：

1) **each** 指两者以上事物，而 **every** 指三者以上。例如：

Each sex has its own physical and psychological characteristics.

(Swan)(男性和女性)每个性别都有其自己的身心特点。

On **each** side of the street (which has two sides) there were soldiers. (Close) 街道两侧都有士兵。

On **every/each** side of the square there were soldiers. (ib) 广场每侧都有士兵。

2) **each** 强调个体事物，而 **every** 强调全体事物：

When **every** man had assembled, the master paid them their wages. (Close) 当每个人都来集合了，主人就给他们发工资。

For three months we did nothing but go over **each** poem line by line. (Wilde) 三个月来，我们什么也没做，只是逐行地复习每首诗歌。

Every child likes to play. (= All children like to play.) (RHD) 每个孩子都爱玩。

Each boy and **each** girl has the license. (RHD) 男孩子、女孩子都有执照。(each/every 连接的并列结构作主语时，谓语用单数)

Every adult and **every** child was holding a flag. (CGEL) 成年人和孩子们都拿着一杆旗子。

但二者在这一点上界限有时不明显，所以常常通用：

Every/Each man knows his job/what he has to do. (Close) 每个人都知道他的工作/他必须做的事。

Each/Every couple was asked to complete a form. (CGEL) (与表整体含义的集合名词连用) 每对夫妇都被要求填写一张表格。

3) **every** 可和某些副词 (如 not/almost/nearly)、数词、强调词

(如 single)等连用,而 each 不能:

Almost every building was damaged in the earthquake. (Alexander) 地震中差不多每座建筑物都遭到了损坏。

Not every horse can run fast. (ALD) (不说 * Not each) 不是每匹马都能跑得快。

I see them **once every** two months. (Snow) 我每两个月见到他们一次。

I answer **every single** letter I receive. (Alexander) 我对收到的每封信都给以回复。

I got there **every third** day. (ALD) 我每隔两天到那儿一次。
(比较 every three days)

Every other man carried a lighted torch. (Freeman) 每隔一个人,就有人举着一支火把。

She was so beautiful that she eclipsed **every other** woman at the ball. (ALD) 她是如此美丽以至于使舞会上的其他女子都黯然失色。

Every now and then a new plane would take off. (Sinclair) 每隔一会儿就又有架飞机起飞。

4) every 偶尔与物质名词或抽象名词连用,意为“一切,每个方面的”:

He gave us **every assistance/encouragement**. (= He assisted/encouraged us in every way.) (Close) 他给我们一切帮助/鼓励。(他在各个方面给我们帮助/鼓励。)

You have **every reason** to fear him. (MED) 你有充分理由害怕他。

I have **every respect** for him as a writer. (Halsey) 他作为一个作家,我十分尊敬他。

5) 在句法功能上, every 只能作定语,而 each 既可作定语,也可

作名词性成分:

Two boys entered, **each** (boy) was carrying a suitcase. (PEG)

(主语)两个男孩子进来,每人提着一个手提箱。

He gave two to **each**. (Palmer)(介词宾语)他给每人两个。

Each one has two coats. (Close)(定语)每人有两件大衣。

They **each** have two coats. (Close)(同位语)他们每人有两件大衣。

They have **each** told me the same story. (ib)(同位语)他们每个人都给我讲了同样的故事。

She sent them **each** a present. (Swan)(同位语)她送给每人一份礼物。(each可放在间接宾语后作间接宾语的同位语,但不能放在直接宾语后作直接宾语的同位语,不说 * She kissed them each.)

They cost one shilling **each**. (Palmer)(同位语)它们每个价钱是一先令。

6) 在较旧的用法中, every 和 each 一起连用, 起到更强调的作用:

I want to thank **each and every** one of you. (RWRT) 我要感谢你们中的每个人。(可以说成 I want to thank each of you / every one of you/all of you 或 Thank you all.)

The captain wants **each and every** man to be here at eight o'clock.

(DAI) 船长要求每个人八点钟在这儿聚齐。

7) every 与 all 有时表达相同意思, 但搭配不同:

Every Monday is horrible. (ib) 每个星期一都是可怕的。

All Mondays are horrible. (Swan) 所有星期一都是可怕的。(all 后接可数名词复数时, 也要指三者以上事物)

all 后还可接单数可数名词(“整个”)或不可数名词(“所有, 全部”):

She was here **all day**. (Swan) (= a/the whole day) 她在这儿呆了一整天。[比较 she was here every day. (ib) 她每天都在这儿。]

All paper has a high carbon content. (RWRT) 所有的纸都有高碳含量。

下句中的 every 不能换成 all:

I enjoyed **every** minute of the party. (LDCE) (不能说 * all minute(s) at the party) 舞会上的每一分钟我都过得很高兴。

与 all 有某些相似意义的形容词 whole (整个的) 常修饰单数可数名词, 并且常常前面有冠词、属性代词或数词:

We spent **the/this whole day** looking for you. (RED) 我们花了这一整天找你。[比较 He spent **all that year** in London. (ALD) all 放在冠词、属性代词之前]

We spent **a/one whole day** looking for you. 我们花了一整天时间找你。

whole 在表示性质或特征, 为“完整的”之义时, 前边也可不用冠词、属性代词等:

Captive seals still prefer eating **whole** fish rather than pieces. (FWF) 被捕获的海豹仍然爱吃整鱼而不吃碎鱼。

whole 后面有时接复数可数名词, 但与“all + 复数名词”意义可能不同:

All forests in North Africa were destroyed during Roman times. (Alexander) 北非所有的森林(那里的每一片森林)都毁于罗马时代。

Whole forests in North Africa were destroyed during Roman times. (whole 为“完整的”含义) 罗马时代北非(好多)整片林区都毁了。

与抽象名词连用时, 常用 the whole..., 而不用 * all the ...:

the whole truth/distance/environment (CGEL) 全部真相/距离/环境

6.6 each 与 everyone/everybody 及 every one 的比较

1) everyone/everybody 用于三个以上的人, every one 用于三个以上的人或物, 常后接 of 短语; each 用于二者以上的人或物:

There were three boys who called and I gave an apple to **each/everybody/everyone**. (GCE) 有三个男孩子来访, 我给他们每人一个苹果。

We hope **every one** of you will enjoy the film. 我希望你们中每个人都喜欢这部电影。

Every one of the films we've shown this year has been a success. 今年我们放映的每一部电影都很成功。

Each of the two houses is painted a different color. 这两座房子各自漆成一种颜色, 互不相同。

2) everyone 与 everybody 二者基本通用, 后者更口语化:

Everyone/Everybody in the room stood up. (Close) (= All the people in the room stood up.) 房间里每个人都站了起来。

Everyone/Everybody over eighteen now has a vote. (CGEL) 现在每个年满 18 岁以上的人都有选举权。

everyone 偶尔与 of 短语连用, 而 everybody 却不可以:

everyone of them/us/you (Close) 他们/我们/你们中的每个人
[不说 * everybody of them/us/you (ib)]

Everyone of his family will go. (RHD) 他家里所有的人都要去。

3) each 所指的事物或人一般是上文提到的或下文要提到的, 在无上下文交代的情况下, 一般不使用 each; 而 everyone/everybody 却不受此限制:

I walked into the room and gave an apple to **everybody**. (GCE)
(不用 * each) 我走进房间, 给每人一个苹果。

There were two boys who called and I gave an apple to **each**
(GCE) 有两个男孩子来访, 我给他俩每人一个苹果。

6.7 such 与 as, that 连用

1) such (...) as... 结构中 as 后接名词或代词, 表示“像…这样的, 诸如…之类的”, 例如:

Such things as family pride were out of date nowadays. (Lewis)
家族骄傲这种事现在过时了。

I never met **such** a man as he/him for hard work. (Eckersley) 我
从未遇到过像他这样努力工作的人。

Such men as these are dangerous. (McArthur) (these 较少用来
单独指人, 参照 5.1) 这样的人是危险的。

A man **such** as he will surely succeed. (Halsey) 像他这样的人肯
定会成功。

Animals that gnaw, **such** as mice, rats, rabbits and weasels, are
called rodents. (Chambers) 经常咬、啃的动物, 如老鼠、兔子
和黄鼠狼等被称为啮齿动物。

2) such (...) as ... 结构所接为从句时, as 可看作关系代词,
引导的是定语从句, 例如:

I never heard **such** stories as he tells. (Eckersley) (as 作从句宾
语) 我从没听过他讲的那样的故事。

They felt **such** heat in the jungle as they had never felt before.
(DAI) (as 作从句宾语) 在森林里, 他们体验到了以前从未体
验过的酷热。

Such as you see is all that we have. (McArthur) (as 作从句宾语)

你所见到的这些就是我们的全部家当。

He is not **such** a fool **as** he looks. (Palmer) (as 作从句表语)他不像看上去的那样傻。

Such women **as** knew Tom (= Those women who knew Tom) thought he was charming. (ALD)(as 作从句主语)认识汤姆的妇女认为他是迷人的。

We had hoped to give you a chance **such** as nobody else ever had. (Lewis) (= ... such a chance as ...; as 作从句主语) 我们想给你一个别人从未有过的机会。

Such of us **as** know him will regret his death. (Chambers)(as 作从句主语) 我们当中认识他的人都会为他的死感到难过。

3) **such** (...) **that** ... 结构中, **that** 作为连词后接状语从句, 表示程度或结果。例如:

It is **such** a small matter **that** I do not care to make any charge. (Wilde) 这么点小事, 我不想收费。

He shut the window with **such** force **that** the glass broke. (Chambers) 他关窗户使劲太大, 把玻璃都震碎了。

They had **such** a fierce dog **that** no one dare to go near their house. (PEG) 他们有那样一条凶猛的狗, 以致于没人敢靠近他们家。

such 用作本体代词接 **that** 从句时, 主句常常为联系动词句:

The situation is **such that** agreement is unlikely. (Long) 情况是这样(不妙), 达成协议是不大可能的。

His anger was **such that** he lost control of himself. (Chambers) 他气得不能控制自己。

Such was the force of the explosion **that** all the windows were broken. (The force of the explosion was such that...) 爆炸力大得把所有窗子都震碎了。

6.8 the same as 与 the same that 之异同

1) as 与 that 都可和 the same 连用,引导定语从句这样用时,as 比 that 更正式。as 或 that 担任宾语、介词宾语和表语等成分:

You must show my wife **the same** respect **as** you show me.

(ALD) (宾语) 你对我妻子要像对我一样尊敬。

We drove out of the town by **the same** road **as** we had entered by.

(ib) (介词宾语) 我们沿着进城来时的路驶出城外。

My stand on this is just **the same as** it was four years ago. (表语)

我在这事上的立场和四年前一样。

That is **the very same** tune (**that**) I heard yesterday. (ALD) (宾

语) 这和我昨天听的曲子一样。

She is **the same** girl (**that**) I sat next to in class last year. (介词

宾语) 她就是去年上课坐我旁边的那个女孩儿。

as 像 that (参照 7.9) 一样,可指主句中一个表时间、处所或方式的名词,以其为先行词,而在定语从句中担任时间/处所/方式状语(不再是名词性成分):

Our eggs are sold **the same day as/that** they come in. (时间状

语) 我们的鸡蛋在进货当天就卖出去。

Shall we meet at **the same place as/that** we last met? (处所状语)

我们在与上次相同的地点会面吗?

I went out **the same way (as/that)** I'd got in. (Swan) (处所状

语; the same way 前省略介词) 我从我进来的原路出去了。

I shall not be surprised if he does this **the same way as** I do. [方

式状语; as 可理解为关系代词(也有人称关系副词)或连词]

如果他办这件事和我的做法一样,我是不会感到奇怪的。

He answered with **the same absolute simplicity as** he was ques-

tioned (Jespersen) (方式状语; as 可理解为关系代词或连词)
他的回答也像对方的问题那样极其简单。

2) the same as 与 the same that 一个较明显的不同之处是 as 之后可接短语或从句的省略形式,而 that 不能:

He has books of **the same size (as those)**. (RHD) 他有(与那些)同样大小的书。

Robbie looked just **the same as ever**. (Sinclair) (... as he looked ever.) 罗比看来和以往一样。

Her dress is **the same color as mine**. (RWRT) (... as mine is.) 她的衣服和我的衣服颜色相同。

He was about **the same age as Philip**. (Maugham) (... as Philip was.) 他跟菲力普差不多同样年龄。

We're in **the same position as at the end of last summer**. (Davis) (... as we were at the end of last summer.) 我们的处境与去年夏末相同。

有时在较严格的情况下,用 the same that 指“同一个”而用 the same as 指“同一种”:

He is reading **the same book as** she is. (“同种”或“同名”的书)
他正跟她读一样的书。

He is reading **the same book that** she is reading. (同一本书) 他正跟她读同一本书。

但有时这种较严格的界限被忽视:

She is wearing **the same dress as/that** she wore yesterday.
(RWRT) (as 更正式些) 她穿着和昨天一样的衣服。

6.9 some 指可数与不可数事物

不定代词 some 可指可数事物(复数及单数)和不可数事物,兼作

属性代词和本体代词:

1) **some** 指复数可数事物

表示不确定的数量,“一些”:

There are **some** letters for you. (Alexander) 有你几封信。

I hadn't any cigarettes, so I went out to buy **some**. (Eckersley)

我没有香烟了,所以出去买一些。

表示以全体为参照的部分数量,“有些”:

Some people have no manners. (Alexander) 有些人没有礼貌。

Some say “only fools fall in love,” but I don't believe it. (LDCE)

有些人说“只有傻子才坠入爱河”,但我不相信是这样。

Some 放在数词前,表“大约”:

Some 300 were present. (RHD) 大约 300 人在场。

The club has **some** forty members. (Halsey) 俱乐部大约有 40 个成员。

He spent **some** twelve years of his life in Africa. (ALD) 他在非洲生活了大约 12 年。

2) **some** 指单数事物

表示不确定/未知的“某个人、物、地点等”:

Some man at the door is asking to see you. (ALD) 门口有个人要见你。[比较 Any dog might bite a child if teased. (CGEL) 任何一只狗都会咬逗弄它的孩子。]

I suggested to Red that we should go to **some** hotel. (Davis) 我向瑞德提议我们应去某个宾馆。

Some one (or other) said so. 有个人这么说。

与表示时间的单数名词连用:

Some day I'll tell you a secret. (CGEL) (= one day) 有一天我要告诉你一个秘密。

We expect him back **some time** next week. (Priestley) 我们期望

他下周的某个时间回来。

3) **some** 指不可数的事物,表不确定的量,“一些/有些”

There is **some** milk in the fridge. (Alexander) 冰箱里有些牛奶。

I looked everywhere for fresh fruit before I found **some**. (LDCE)

我四处寻找才找到一些新鲜水果。

All work is not dull; **some** work is pleasant. (ALD) 并非所有工

作是枯燥无味的;有些工作是令人愉快的。

I enjoy **some** music, but much of it bores me. (Eckersley) 有些

音乐我喜欢,但大部分音乐令我讨厌。

I agree with **some** of what you say. (Jones) 你说的话,有些我是

同意的。

4) 表示感情色彩或较强的肯定语气

表示感情色彩:

There must be **some** job I could do. (Swan)(缺乏兴趣) 一定有
种什么活计我可以干的。

I don't want to spend my life in **some** muddy little village miles
from anywhere. (CGEL)(蔑视) 我不想在一个四处不着边儿的
泥泞小村庄度过一生。

That's **some** radio you've bought! (Alexander)(赞许) 你买的那
台收音机真不一般。

较强的肯定语气:

That was **some** storm. (ib) 可真是一场大风暴。

That is **some** help to us. (It helps us to a certain extent.) (ALD)
那在一定程度上帮助了我们。

I shall be gone (for) **some** time. (for quite a long time) (ib) 我要
离开相当一段时间。

6.10 一些非确指代词在句中“数”的呼应

非确指代词像 some, any, half, more, most, what, which, who 等按实意可指单数(可数事物单数或不可数事物)或者复数。比较下面各组的 a 和 b:

- a. **Most** bear is cheap, but some is expensive. 大多数啤酒是便宜的,但有些很贵。
- b. **Most** are over 30; some are younger. 大多数人是 30 多岁,但也有些较年轻的人。
- a. Is **any** of these books suitable? 这些书中有哪本是合适的吗?
- b. Are **any** of these books available? 这些书中有哪些可以买到吗?
- a. **All** is stolen or lost. 所有东西不是被弄丢了就是被偷了。
- b. **All** are attending the meeting. 所有人都要出席这个会议。
- a. **Half** of my work is boring; half is too difficult. 我的工作一半乏味,一半太难。
- b. **Half** of the lemons are unripe; half are bad. 这些柠檬一半不熟,一半坏了。
- a. There isn't any **more** (milk). 没有(更多)牛奶了。
- b. Instead of fewer accidents there are **more**. 事故不是减少,而是增多了。
- a. I can see **what** appears to be a ship. 我可以看到一个看上去像船一样的一种东西。
- b. We can see **what** appear to be camels. 我们能看到看上去像骆驼一样的一些东西。
- a. **What** is needed most is books. 最需要的是书。
- b. **What** we need most is/are books. 我们最需要的是书。

- a. **What** I say and do is my own affair/are my own affairs. 我
说什么做什么是我自己的事。
- b. **What** I say and what I think are my own affairs. 我说什么
和想什么是我自己的事。
- a. **Which** is your favorite composer? 你最喜爱的作曲家是哪一
位?
- b. **Which** are your favorite novelists? 你最喜欢的小说家是哪几
位?
- a. It was so dark I couldn't tell **who** was who. 天非常黑,我认
不出谁是谁。
- b. I don't like people **who** lose their temper easily. 我不喜欢爱
发脾气的人。
- a. I gave the book to him, **who** is so careless that he's lost it.
我把那本书给了他,可他却粗心地把它丢了。
- b. It's you **who** are to blame. 是你要受到责怪。(比较 I, **who**
am nobody, adore you. 我,一个小人物,很羡慕你。)
- a. Bob is the only one of many friends **who** is helping me paint
my house. 鲍勃是惟一帮助我刷房子的人。
- b. Jane is one of the students **who** speak English fluently. 简是
能够流利说英语的学生之一。

“Many a + 名词”和“more than one + 名词”结构中,“a/one + 名词”习惯上被看作名词短语的中心,而决定该名词短语作主语时与单数谓语动词连用。前面 many 或 more than 所带复数意义被置于不顾:

Many a member/More than one member has protested against the proposal. 很多成员/不只一个成员已对此项建议提出了抗议。(比较 More members than one have protested against the proposal.)

More than one person is going to lose his or her job. 不只一人要

失去工作。

more than one 后接“of + 复数名词”时,谓语用复数动词:

More than one of these gentlemen have expressed this opinion. 这些男士中不只一人表示过这一想法。

6.11 either, neither, none 在句中“数”的一致

1) either, neither

本意“二者之一”的 either 作主语时,在正式规范说法中要与单数谓语动词连用,但在不太正式的说法中,其含义常被模糊为“二者”,而与复数谓语动词连用(尤其后接 of 短语时)。相应否定代词 neither 也有这种情况。

正式规范说法:

Either of the plans is equally dangerous. 这两个计划哪个都一样地危险。

Is **either** of the books available? (RHD) 这两本书有哪本可以买到吗?

I made two suggestions, and **neither** was accepted. (RHD) 我提出两个建议,没有一个被接受。

非正式说法:

Either of them are welcome. (CGEL) 他们俩都受欢迎。

Have **either** of them been seen so far? 到现在为止,看到过他们中的一个吗?

Neither are to be trusted. (RHD) 没有一个可以受到信赖。

either/neither 可作定语(none 不可以),这时要与单数名词连用。如果该短语作主语,谓语一般用单数动词:

Neither statement is true. (RHD)(这两种)哪种论述都不真实。

“Do you want an appointment at 9 or 10?” “**Either time** is diffi-

cult. / **Neither time is convenient.**” (Alexander) “你想把约会定在 9 点还是 10 点?” “哪个时间都不方便。”

(n) either 与 (n) or 作复合连词, 连接并列主语时, 一般根据“近邻一致”的原则, 根据最靠近谓语动词的一个主语的数和人称而选用相应形式的谓语动词:

Either your brakes or your eyesight is at fault. 要么是你的车闸要么是你的视力出差错了。

Either your eyesight or your brakes are at fault. (含义同上)

Either my wife or I am going. 或是我妻子或是我要去。

Either I or my wife is going. (含义同上)

Either he or you are going to resign. 或是他或是你要辞职。

Either I or he is going to resign. 或是我或是他要辞职。

Neither you nor I, nor anyone else knows the answer. 不论你, 我, 还是其他任何人都不知道这个答案。

在不太正式的情况下, 谓语动词也有时用复数:

Either you or I are wrong. / **Neither you nor I are** wrong. (RHD)
或是你或是我错了。/ 你和我都不错。

If either David or Janet come, they will want a drink. 不管是大卫还是珍妮特来, 他们都要喝杯饮料。

Neither he nor his wife has/have arrived. 他和他妻子都没到。

Neither my brothers nor my sister is/are red-haired. (Alexander)
我的哥哥们和我的姐姐都不是红头发。

2) none

指可数事物时, 若强调单一性, 谓语用单数。但 none 的含义(本义“一个也没有”)常被模糊为“此类事物都没有”而与复数动词连用。none 指不可数事物时, 谓语动词自然应用单数:

If a repairman is needed, there's none better than my brother. 如果需要个修理工, 没有比我哥哥更合适的了。

None of the drivers has/have turned up. 哪个司机都没露面。

None of them is the man I met yesterday. 他们都不是我昨天见到的那个人。(句中 the man 提示 none 指单数,所以动词用单数)

None but the nurses deserve a salary increase. 只有护士们才应长工资。

But of his 3 sons, **none has** any great ability. (Wood) 但他的三个儿子,没有一个有多大才华的。(强调每一个)

None of the letters have been opened yet. (ib) 这些信件都没开封。

“Are there any plums?” “No, there aren't any.” (非正式) / “No, there are no plums.” (正式) / “No, there **are none** left.” (强调) “还有葡萄干吗?” “没葡萄干了。” (作蛋糕用的葡萄干通常以多数形式保存)

6.12 冠词与属性代词的词序

冠词要放在前位属性代词 all, both, half, such, what 等之后:

All (the) students were accepted. (CGEL) 所有(那些)学生都被接受了。

All the children were under seven. (Cronin) 所有那些孩子都不到7岁。

All the money is spent. (Eckersley) 所有钱都花了。

Both the students were excellent. (CGEL) 两个学生都很优秀。

Half the apples are bad. (Evans) 一半苹果是坏的。

The dog eats **half a pound** of meat every day. (FWF) 这只狗每天吃半磅肉。[比较 two pounds and a half/two and a half pounds (ALD) 两磅半]

Half an hour later they assembled in Aunt Em's drawing-room.

(Galsworthy) 半小时后他们在艾姆姨的客厅集合。

He is **such a fool**. (CGEL) 他是那样一个大傻瓜。(否定句中不用不定冠词: There is no such thing.)

What a mess they made! (CGEL) 他们弄得真叫一团糟!(比较
What babies they are! 他们是多么幼稚的娃娃啊!)

指量代词 many 在与定冠词、物主代词连用时,放在他们之后:

His many friends all came to support him. (Close) 他的很多朋友都来支持他。

He sold **all the many houses**. 他把所有那么多房子都卖了。

但与词义本不相配的不定冠词 a 连用,属惯用法,要放在 a 前:

Many a man would be glad of your job. (Eckersley) 很多人都会为有你这样的工作而高兴。

Many a ship has been wrecked on those rocks. (ib) 很多船只在那些礁石上触礁遇难。(“many a + 单数名词”作主语时,谓
语动词用单数)

I have seen him there **many a time**. (Millington) 我在那儿看到他很多次。

Exercise 6

- I. 选用包括不定代词 every, each, all, other, another 和指量代词 many, much, more 以及复合代词 something, whatever 等在内的各种代词填空(如人称代词、反身代词、物主代词、指示代词、疑问代词、关系代词、不定代词、否定代词等);对于应该填入的 her, 要指明其为人称代词宾格表示“她”或物主代词表示“她的”;对于应该填入的 it(兼用于前指与后指,即也可指前面所述事物,也可指后面所述事物),说明其为前指或者后指;对于应该填入的 that(多属前指,即指前面所述的事物),写出其所指的特

定词语:

Helen was famous the world over, and in _____ (1) civilized country, the great and the renown were eager to meet her and do _____ (2) for her. Heads of state, scholars and artists vied(争先恐后) to receive _____ (3), and she had traveled _____ (4) over the world to satisfy _____ (5) burning curiosity.

Arm in arm, casually, as if they just happened to be fond of _____ (6) _____ (7), the two old ladies(Helen Keller and her companion Miss Thomson, both in their seventies), walked through the garden toward the terrace, where we were waiting for _____ (8).

“_____ (9) must be wisteria(紫藤花),” said Helen, “and masses of _____ (10), too — I recognize the scent.”

I went to pick a large bunch of the blossoms _____ (11) surrounded the terrace, and laid it in her lap.

“I knew _____ (12)!” she cried happily, touching them (blossoms).

“You know,” she continued. “_____ (13) are on the way to Florence to see Michelangelo’s David(米开朗其罗的塑像《大卫》). I’m so thrilled; _____ (14) ’ve always wanted to see _____ (15).”

Mystified(茫然不解), I looked at Miss Thomson, _____ (16) nodded.

“_____ (17) ’s true,” she said, “The Italian government has had a scaffolding(临时高架) erected around the statue so that Helen can climb up and touch _____ (18), _____ (19) ’s what she calls ‘seeing’.”

Helen was led to the table, to her chair, and I watched _____ (20) "see" _____ (21) place setting. Quick as lightning, her hands moved over the objects on the table — plate, glass, silverware — memorizing where _____ (22) were. Never once during the meal did she grope about; _____ (23) reached out casually and firmly like the rest of _____ (24).

After dinner, we stayed on the terrace, surrounded by clusters of wisteria, the sun below _____ (25) glittering on the sea. Helen sat in the usual way, head raised slightly as though listening to _____ (26), her sightless blue eyes wide open. Her face, although one of an old lady's, had _____ (27) of a schoolgirl's innocence. _____ (28) suffering must have tormented her, and might be still tormenting her, for _____ (29) I knew, her face showed _____ (30) trace of it. _____ (31) was an isolated face, a saintly face (一张超脱的脸, 一张圣洁的脸).

II. 用 every, each 或 all 填空:

1. I see them once _____ two months.
2. I have read _____ the books on the subject.
3. I enjoyed _____ minute of the party.
4. It's _____ man for himself in this business.
5. There came two men, _____ man taking a book with him.

III. 从括号中选择正确的答案:

1. I haven't many specimens but I will send you (such as, such that) I have.
2. Take (such as, so as) you need.

3. The topics were (such that, such as) they all had something to write about.
4. This is (the same, such) place that we met yesterday.
5. (Everyone, Every one) of the books is interesting.

IV. 改正下列句子中的错误:

1. In the early morning the first thing that my brother and me did was to go out to see the pony.
2. It is required by law that a husband have to pay the debts of his wife until formal notice is given that he no longer has to pay her.
3. Each cigarette which a person smokes does some harm, and eventually you may get a serious disease from its effect.
4. Among pure pharmaceuticals(单纯药剂), the earliest to be isolated(分离出来)from natural sources they were the alkaloids(生物碱).

第七章 疑问代词/副词, 关系代词/副词, 连接代词/副词

7.1 名词性问题从句与名词性关系从句

疑问代词/副词包括 what, which, who(m), whose, when, where, why, how, 可引导名词性问题从句(wh-词仍保留疑问意义);连接代词/副词包括 what(ever), which(ever), who(m)ever, when, where, why, how 等,可引导名词性关系从句(上述这些词失去疑问意义)。例如:

Tell me **where** he's living. 告诉我他现在住在哪儿。(问题从句; where 为保留疑问意义的疑问副词)

That's **where** I'm living. (关系从句; where 为失去疑问意义的连接副词) 那就是我的住处。

名词性问题从句表示的是抽象的问题,所以不能作指具体人/物的间接宾语从句、宾语补足语从句或呼语从句;而名词性关系从句既能表示抽象事物又能表示具体人/物,所以具有名词的所有句法功能,包括担任间接宾语、宾语补足语和呼语的功能(参照以下各节例句)。

关于问题从句和关系从句要注意以下几点:

1) 问题从句作主语时,从句多后置,而全句用引导词 it 作形式主语;但是关系从句作主语时,则一般不能用引导词 it:

It was clear **what she meant**. (Maugham) 她是什么意思,那很清楚。(问题从句)

What worries him is the rumors. (RWRT) 他忧虑的是那些谣言。(关系从句,不能说 * It is the rumors what worries

him.)

2) 在问题从句中,介词常可移到疑问代词前;而在关系从句中,介词一般不能提到连接代词前:

He didn't know **who he should turn to for help.** / He didn't know **to whom he should turn for help.** 他不知道向谁求助。

I asked them **what they based their predictions on.** / I asked them **on what they based their predictions.** (CGEL) 我问他们什么是他们进行预测的根据。

They ate **what they paid for.** (RWRT)(关系从句;不说 *... for what they paid.) 他们吃了所买东西。

3) 问题从句前与形容词相关的介词可省去,而关系从句前的与形容词相关的介词一般不能省略:

She was not **aware (of) how much her husband earned.** (Hornby)(问题从句) 她不知道她丈夫挣多少钱。

I wasn't **certain (of) whose house I was in.** (GCE) (问题从句) 我说不准我当时是在谁的家中。

He's **aware of what I write.** (CGEL) (关系从句;of 不能省) 他知道我写的内容。

4) 包含问题从句的疑问复合句,若主句动词为 think, say 等时,则主句放在疑问代词/副词之后、全句中间:

Who(m) **do you think I met** in the park this morning? [比较 **Do you know who(m) I mean?** (Schibsbye)] 你设想今天上午我在公园遇到了谁?

To whom **do they believe we sent the money?** / **Who do they believe we sent the money to?** 他们认为我们把钱寄给谁了?

疑问代词/副词除了 what 和 how 外,都可转作关系代/副词,引导定语从句,参照以下相关各节内容。

7.2 what 保留或失去疑问意义引导不同的名词从句

1) what 保留疑问意义,引导问题从句:

主语从句:

Does it matter **what color it is**? (ALD) 什么颜色有关系吗?

表语从句:

The problem is **what we should do to help him**. 问题是我们应该做什么来帮助他。

宾语从句:

I can't imagine **what they want with your address**. (CGEL) 我想不出来他们要你的地址干什么。

保留宾语从句:

They were asked **what they were doing**. 有人问他们在干什么。

带补语宾语从句:

Have you made it clear **what the book is about**? 你弄清这书是关于什么内容的了吗? (it 为形式宾语, clear 为宾语补语)

介词宾语从句:

They talked about **what they should do next**. 他们谈论下一步应该做什么。

同位语从句:

The question often comes up in my mind **what I shall say when he comes**. 当他来时我该说什么,这个问题经常涌上我的心头。

2) what 失去疑问意义,引导关系从句。what = the thing(s)

that; that which:

主语从句:

- **What will be**, will be. (谚) 要发生的事总是要发生的。

表语从句:

His office telephone number is **what I want to know**. 他的办公室电话号码是我想知道的。

宾语从句:

I took **what they offered me**. (CGEL) 我拿了他们给我的东西。

保留宾语从句:

You'll be given **what(ever) you need**. 你需要什么就给你什么。

(主动句中亦宾语从句 He'll give you what you need.)

带补语宾语从句:

We shouldn't regard as impossible **what is really possible**. 我们不应把可能的事认为不可能。

介词宾语从句:

The actual sum is no greater than **what Mr. Eisenhower asked for**. 实际数量正如艾森豪威尔先生所要求的,一点也不多。

宾语补语从句:

Her mother made her **what she is**. 她的妈妈使她成为现在这样一个人。

同位语从句:

Fame and fortune — **what others sought after with zest** — was all rubbish to him. 名誉和金钱(其他人热心追求的东西)对他来说犹如粪土。

3) **what** 在所引导的从句中可作主语、宾语、介词宾语、定语等成分:

No one can tell **what will happen next**. 没人能预知下一步会发生什么事。(主语)

You have no idea **about what I suffered**. (Wilde)(宾语) 你不知道我受的苦。

I can't imagine **what it is like/what you do it for**. (GCE)(介词宾语) 我想不出它是怎么样/你为什么做那件事。

I will give you **what help I can (give)**. (Palmer) (定语) (all the help that ...) 我愿给你我能给予的一切帮助。

4) what 所引导的两种从句有时是难以区分的,例如:

They asked me **what I knew**.

该句可分别理解为:

i) "What do you know?" they asked me. 他们问我我知道什么。

ii) They asked me the things that I know. 他们问我我所知道的事情。

再如: **What she wrote** was a mystery. 可理解为:

i) People didn't know what she wrote. 她写的是什么对人们来说是个谜。

ii) The thing that she wrote was a mystery story. 她写的是篇神秘小说。

7.3 who 在现代英语中不引导名词性关系从句

who 在现代英语中,常用来引导问题从句,却不太常用来引导名词性关系从句。但在较旧的用法,尤其是谚语中,曾常用 who 引导名词性关系从句。

问题从句:

I asked him **who came into the room**. (Frisky) 我问他谁进屋来了。

Did Kitty ever tell you **who that girl's father is**? (Shaw) 凯蒂告诉过你那女孩儿的爸爸是谁吗?

I wonder **who he met**. (LDCE) 我不知道他遇到了谁。

I don't know **who(m) you mean**. (Hornby) 我不知道你指的是谁。

名词性关系从句:

Who controls the past controls the future. (谚)(Anyone who controls the past...) 主宰过去的人也主宰未来。

Who is born a fool is never cured. (谚) 生来是个傻瓜,怎么治还是傻。

Who knows most says least. (谚) 知道最多的人说得最少。

Ask **whom you like**. (anyone whom you like; 非正式: Ask who you like.) 问你想问的人。

who 在引导名词性关系从句时,可有特指意义和非特指意义。

特指的 who 常见于作表语的名词从句:

She can marry **who (ever)/ whom(ever) she pleases**. (CGEL)
(非特指; anyone who/whom she pleases) 她可以和她喜欢的任何人结婚。

So that's **who he's working for**. (ib) (特指; the person he's working for) 那么那就是他正为之工作的人。

7.4 whatever, whoever 和 which(ever) 引导的问题从句与名词性关系从句

1) whatever 引导名词性关系从句时,相当于 any (thing)/every (thing) that 等意:

Whatever I have is at your service. (ALD) (主语从句,不能用引导词 it 而把从句置于句末) 我所有的一切都归你支配。

I will do **whatever you wish**. (Bennet) (宾语从句) 我愿做你所希望的任何事情。

We will be grateful for **whatever amount you can afford**. (ALD)
(介词宾语从句) 你提供多少数量,我们都会很感激。

whatever 在从句中可作主语、宾语、定语等:

You must do **whatever is best for you**. (Galsworthy) (主语) 你必须做对你最有益的事。

He was to do **whatever Mr. Buggins told him to do**. (Wells) (宾语) 他要做巴金斯先生让他做的任何事情。

She would tell him **whatever news she got**. (Sinclair) (定语) 她会把她所获得的任何消息全都告诉他。

2) **whoever** 引导名词关系从句, 相当于 **anyone who, the person who** 等:

Whoever breaks this law deserves a fine. (CGEL) (主语从句; 不能用形式主语 *it*) 任何违反这条规则者都应被罚款。

She can marry **whoever/whomever she chooses**. (Eckersley) (不能用形式主语 *it*) 她可以和她选择的任何人结婚。

We will give **whoever needs help** warm support. (间接宾语从句; 问题从句不能作间接宾语) 谁需要支持, 我们就给谁以热情的支持。

You're responsible to **whoever is in charge of sales**. (ALD) (介词宾语从句) 你对掌管销售的人员负责, 无论其为何人。

whoever 在从句中作主语, 非正式用语中也常顶替作宾语的 **whomever**:

He knew the files could be of help to **whoever took over the job**. (Sinclair) (**whoever** 在从句中作主语, 不能换成 **whomever**) 他知道这些档案对接管这项工作的人可能有帮助。

They should enjoy complete freedom to marry **whomever/whoever they might desire**. (Foster) 他们应当享有完全的自由来与他们意欲与其结婚的人结为夫妻。

whatever 和 **whoever** 都不能引导问题从句。

3) **which (ever)** 引导名词关系从句; **which** 引导问题从句 (**whichever** 一般不引导问题从句):

问题从句:

She asked me **which of the galleries I like best in Florence.**

(Lewis) 她问我,我最喜欢佛罗伦萨的哪家美术馆。

The twins are so much alike that I never know **which is which.**

(Chambers) 这对双胞胎是如此相像,以致我分不清哪个是哪个。

He knows **which side his bread is buttered on.** (Ball) 他了解他的利益所在(知道他的面包哪面抹了黄油)。

He couldn't remember **on which shelf he kept it/couldn't remember which shelf he kept it on.** 他记不起把那东西放在哪个架子上。

名词性关系从句(= any ... that):

You may select **which you like.** (MED) 你可以选择你喜欢的那个。

Take **which (dresses) you want** from my wardrobe. (Chambers) 从我的衣橱中拿你想要的任何一件衣服。

Run **which way you will.** (Watson) 你爱从哪条道儿跑就从哪条道儿跑。

Run **which way you will**, you won't escape. (ib) 无论你怎么跑,你也逃脱不了。(逗号前的从句为包含名词性关系从句的让步状语从句)

whichever (= any ... that) 引导名词关系从句,比 which 语气强:

Whichever (of you) comes in first will receive a prize. [any one (of you) that...] (你们中)哪个先来,哪个得奖。

Buy **whichever is cheapest.** (Watson) 哪个便宜买哪个。

Take **whichever seat you like.** (McArthur) 你喜欢坐哪个座位就坐哪个。

You should vote for **which (ever) candidate you think best.**
(CGCE) 你认为谁最好,就投谁的票。

7.5 which 作关系代词与 that 的比较

在定语从句中,关系代词 **which** 与 **that** 皆可指事物,有时通用:
The government **which/that promises to cut taxes will be more popular.** (Alexander) (作主语) 许诺减税的政府才会更得人心。

He lives in the house **which/that is opposite ours.** (Mcarthur)
(作主语) 他住在我们对面的那所房子里。

This is the book (**which/that**) **you wanted.** (Chambers) (作宾语)
这是你想要的那本书。

The car **which/that I hired** broke down after five kilometres.
(Thomson) (作宾语) 我雇的那辆车开出去五公里之后抛锚了。

The chair **which/that you are sitting on** is an antique. (ib) (作介词宾语)
你正坐的那把椅子是件古董。

This is the house **which/that I went into.** (McArthur) (作介词宾语)
这是我进去过的那所房子。

但有时二者并不通用:

1) 正式语体中,表示事物(包括人)的类属性质、特征、身份等时用 **which**; 表示特定的个体时用 **that** (或 **who**):

This is not the type of modern house **which** my own is. (CGEL)
这不是我的房子那种现代化住宅。(不用 **that**, **which** 作表语表类属,多不省略)

She wants low-calorie food, **which** this vegetable curry certainly is. (ib) 她要低热量食物,这种咖喱蔬菜当然属那种食品。

(非限定性从句中作表语,指事物类属)

I was surprised to find Tom a different man from the one **which** I used to know. 我惊讶地发现汤姆这时已不是我原来熟知的那种人了。(which 作宾语,表类属,多不省略。比较 ... that I used to know. ...我原来熟知的那个人。)

She is the perfect accountant **which** her predecessor was not. (CGEL) 她是她的前任所不能达到的那种十全十美的会计师。[指人的类属,不用 that/who。比较 Stay faithful to the person **who/that** you're married to. (Swan) 对与你结婚的人要忠贞不渝。(who/that 指具体某个人)]

非正式语体或口语中,也有时用 that 表类属:

The country village and the urban housing estate both needed the best men **which/that** can be found for them. (Schibsbye) 农村与城市住宅区都需要能为它们找到的最优秀的管理人才。

Shaw is commonly regarded as a Funny Man than as the revolutionary **which/that**, at bottom, he is. (ib) 一般都把萧伯纳看作滑稽人,不看作革命者,而他骨子里却是个革命者。

2) 直接跟在介词后时,要用 which 而不用 that; 若不紧跟在介词后,也可用 that:

It was an agreement of which the details/an agreement the details **of which** could not be altered. (Alexander) 那是一份细节不可改动的协议书。

The ladder **on which** I was standing began to slip. (Thomson) 我正站在上面的那个梯子开始滑动。(比较 The ladder **which/that** I was standing **on** began to slip.)

The documents **for which** they were searching have been recovered. (Chambers) 他们正在搜寻的那些文件已找回来了。(比较 The documents **which/that** they were searching **for**...)

指具体明确的关系时,介词多后置于句末(也可放在关系代词前)(参照上面例句),但指抽象或隐含关系时,介词要放在关系代词前:

Jane was a woman **with whom** age did not count. (Schwann)(不说 * a woman that age did not count with) 珍妮是那么一位妇女,年龄对她来说全不算数。

the pilot's carelessness **through which** the plane was destroyed (CGEL) (不说 * that... through) 驾驶员疏忽造成的飞机被毁

the meeting **during which** I kept falling asleep. (ib) (不说 * that... during) 我在开会时困得总要入睡的那次会议

“动词+介词”为不可分割的惯用语时,介词不放在关系代词前:

Those are the conditions (**which/that**) he can't put up with. (不说 * with which... put up) 那些是他不能忍受的条件。

3) 在 all, any, every, no, only, few, little, many, much, the first/last/beat 等代词限定词及形容词最高级后一般用 that 而不用 which, 指人时也可用 who:

All that glitters is not gold. (谚) 闪闪发光的不都是金子。

If the members of your club have **any questions that** haven't been answered by this letter, please write again. 如果你俱乐部成员有什么这封信还没回答的问题,请再写信。

He never says **anything that** is worth listening to. (Eckersley) 他从来不说值得一听的话。

Nobody who/that watched the match will ever forget it. (Alexander) 看过这场比赛的人都不会忘记它。

It is **the only building (that)** I've ever seen which is made entirely of glass. (Schwann) 这是我见过的惟一一座全用玻璃建造的建筑。

Teachers are **the last person who/that** can believe (that) all men are born equal. (Schibsbye) 教师们最不会相信人人生来全都平等的说法。

Which was **the first/fastest/next steamship that** crossed the Atlantic? (Close) 哪艘轮船首先/最快/随于其后横渡了大西洋?

There was **little/not much that** interested him at the motor show. (CGEC) 在那个汽车展览会上没有什么使他感兴趣的东西。

I'm keeping **the few that** remain for tomorrow. (LDCE) 我正收藏着准备明天用的那几个。

4) 非限制性定语从句中多用 which 而不用 that; 限制性定语从句中, 二者通常都可使用:

Maczluwacz's masterpiece is the sonata for massed choirs and percussion, **which** was written when he was only 19. (Swan) 马兹卢瓦茨的杰作是为联合唱诗班和打击乐器组所写的奏鸣曲, 这一奏鸣曲是在他年仅 19 岁时写的。

They thought him dull, **which** he was not. (RHD) (which 指形容词 dull) 他们认为他头脑迟钝, 实际他并非如此。

I asked him to show me the equipment, **which** he did. (Compton) (which 指 to show me the equipment) 我请他让我看看设备, 他就让我看了。

He tore up my photo, **which** upset me. (Swan) (which 指整个主句) 他把我的照片撕了, 这使我很恼怒。(比较 He showed me a photo **which/that** upset me. 他给我看了一张使我恼火的照片。)

某些属非限制性定语从句的惯用短句中用 that:

He took a book sometimes, but never read it **that I saw**. (that 前无停顿, 书面上可无逗号) 他有时拿着一本书, 但就我所见, 他从来没读过。

He had no particular liking, **that I could discover**, for anything.

据我所知,他没什么特别的爱好。

表方式、时间、处所、原因等时,只用 **that** 而不用 **which**; **that** 也可省略(参照 7.9):

I did like **the way (that)** she spoke to me. (Swan) (也可用 **in which**, 但不可单用 **which**) 我真喜欢她对我说话的方式。

I'll never forget **the Sunday (that)/when** you first arrived. (ib) 我永远不会忘记你刚到的那个星期天。

Do you know **anywhere (that)** I can get a drink? (ib) 你知道到哪儿我能喝杯饮料吗?

The moment (that) he had said that he knew what a mistake he had made. (Walpole) 他刚一说到那件事,他就知道自己犯了一个什么样的错误。

It's (high) time (that) he was taught a lesson. (Alexander) (不能用 **which**) 是该(马上)给他一个教训的时候了。

The reason (that)/why he died was lack of medical care. (LD CE) 他死亡的原因是缺少医药治疗。

5) 以 **be** (表“存在”)为谓语的“**there be**”或“**that be**”之类定语从句中,从句主语只能用 **that**, 不用 **which** (或 **who**):

The decisions are in the hands of the powers **that be**. (RHD) 决定权在掌权的当局手中。

Mrs. Dombey **that is to be**, will be very sensible of your attention. (Dickens) 对于你的注意,这位未来的唐贝夫人将会很敏感。

This is the only one (**that**) **there is**. (Hornby) 这是此处所有的惟一个。

6) 其他情况可用 **which** 或用 **that**:

先行词既包括人,也包括物时,一般用 **that**;但如果靠近关系代

词的名词是某种事物时,也可用 which:

He talked brilliantly of **the men and the books that interested him**. (Eckersley) 他对他所喜欢的人和书侃侃而谈。

the persons and events which we have to deal with (RHD) 我们不得不应付的人和事

分裂句中,指物时一般用 that:

What was it that he wanted? (ib) 他想要的是什么?

如前面已有 which, 为了避免重复,用 that:

Which is the car **that** overtook us? 是哪辆车超过了我们?

指物的先行词有复杂的修饰成分时,更倾向于使用 which:

I have *interests (outside my immediate work and its problems)* **which** I find satisfying. (CGEL) (在我的直接工作及其问题之外) 我有自己很满意的爱好。

7.6 who 作关系代词与 that 比较

关系代词 who 与 that 皆可指人,二者有时通用,尤其在某些不定代词、最高级等连用时:

All **who/that** heard him were delighted. (Thomson) 所有听他讲话的人,都感到很高兴。

There were very few passengers **who/that** escaped without serious injury. (Campton) 未受重伤的乘客寥寥无几。

He was the best king **who/that** ever sat on the throne. (Thomson) 他是这个王朝建立以来最贤明的国王。

The students (**whom/who/that**) we examined last week were excellent. (ALD) 我们上周测试的那些学生都是很优秀的。

Where is the man (**whom/who/that**) I saw this morning? (Close) 我今天上午看到的那个人现在在哪儿?

在限制性定语从句中用 **who** 指人比用 **that** 更有尊重其人之意:

They come to me **who** neither work nor am anxious. (Schibsbye)

他们偏来找我这既不参加干活,又对其事漠不关心的人。

(**who** 这里有自重之意)

在非限制性定语从句中,只能用 **who** 不能用 **that**:

My sister, **who** is a nurse, came home for a few days. (Frisky)

我姐姐是一位护士,她回家来呆几天。

My gardener, **who** is very pessimistic, says that there will be no apples this year. (Thomson) 我的园艺师很悲观,说今年不会结苹果。

His mother, **who** by that time was tired out, gave him a smack.

(Chambers) 他的母亲到那时已筋疲力尽了,给了他一巴掌。

在作表语时,可用 **that** 而一般不用 **who**:

She is not the brilliant dancer (**that**) she used to be. (CGEL) 她

不再是过去那个优秀的舞蹈家了。(不用 **who**; **that** 用法参见 7.5)

Fool **that** I was! (I was such a fool!) (CGEL) 我是多么傻啊!

7.7 关系代词 **which** 与 **whose** 的比较

在定语从句中, **which** 和 **whose** 都可作定语,但是加于名词前的 **which** 一般只用在非限制性定语从句中,仅指物,并且要接一个对先行词起概括作用的泛指名词;“**which** + 名词”与先行词指同一事物或情况,既可用于限制性定语从句,也可用于非限制性定语从句;既可指人,也可指物。“**whose** + 名词”与先行词不表示同一事物或情况。比较下面各组例句中的 a 和 b:

- a. He is studying **economics, which knowledge** is very important today. (Watson)(knowledge 概括了 economics) 他正在研究经济学,这门知识今天很重要。
- b. **The house whose windows** are broken is unoccupied. (Hornby) 窗户坏了的那所房子没人住。
- a. **My father may have to go to hospital, in which case** he won't be going on holiday. (Chambers) 我父亲可能得住进医院,要是那种情况,他将不能去度假了。
- b. Atlas (in Greek mythology) was a **kneeling man on whose shoulders** the world rested. (Swan) (希腊神话中的)阿特拉斯跪在那里,肩上扛着世界。
- a. Tom spent **four years in college, during which time** he learned French. 汤姆上了四年大学,其间他学了法语。
- b. It was **an island whose name** I have forgotten. (Hill) 那是一个岛屿,它的名字我已忘记了。
- a. He saw her coming, and advised me **to hide behind the door, which advice** I took at once. 他见到她来了,建议我藏到门后,我马上接受了这建议。
- b. He is **a man whose word** is as good as a bond. (Eckersley) 他是一个很守信用的人。
- a. She spoke in **French, which language** I did not understand. 她用法语讲话,可这门语言我不懂。
- b. **Chopin, whose works** are world famous, composed some of his music in this room. (Thomson) 肖邦的作品世界闻名,其中一些就是在这个房间里创作的。

7.8 关系代词 whose 与 of which 的比较

在定语从句中, whose 可指“某人的”或“属于某物的”(见 7.7), 仅作定语; 而 of which 仅可指物。在指物时, 二者常常可通用:

He mentioned a book **whose title/the title of which/of which the title** I can't remember now. (Close) 他提到一本书, 这本书的名字我现在记不起来了。

This book, **whose author/the author of which/of which the author** is a woman of eighty, is very amusing. (ib) 这本书很有趣, 它的作者是一位 80 岁的老太太。

We found a house **whose roof/the roof of which/of which the roof** had been damaged. 我们找到一所房子, 那房子的房顶已损坏了。

有时为了避免重复累赘的感觉, 使用 whose, 而不用 of which:

He stood looking through some trees the shadows of **whose** trunks were spilled out along the ground. (不说 * the shadows of the trunks of which) 他站在那里, 从树丛中间望去, 那些树干的影子洒落在地上。

相当于 whose 的 of which/of whom 表所属关系, 下面不表所属关系的 of 结构不能用 whose 来取代:

She went to a village **of which** you may have heard. (不能说 * a village whose you may have heard; which 之前的 of 是和动词 heard 相联系的, 即 a village you may have heard of) 她去了一个村庄, 那村庄的名字你可能听说过。

She was married to a physicist **of whom** you may have heard; his name's Valentine Burroughs. (Swan) 她嫁给了一位物理学家, 你可能听说过这个人, 他的名字叫瓦伦丁·巴拉斯。

I can lend you two books, **of which** both/both **of which** are very good. (Close) (不能用 whose) 我可以借给你两本书,这两本书都很好。

7.9 关系代词的省略

在限制性定语从句中,关系代词用作宾语、介词宾语或表语时一般可省略(表类属除外,见 7.5),但如果紧跟在介词后,则不省略:

Is that the man **to whom** you handed your application form?
(Close) 那就是你向之提交申请表的人吗?

Is that the man (**whom/who/that**) you gave your tickets to? (ib)
那就是你给他票的人吗?

The man (**who/that**) I saw is called Smith. (Thomson) 我看见的那个人姓史密斯。

She was twice the man (**that**) her son was. (Schibsbye) (that 指特定个体可省略;作表语时一般不用 who/whom) 她顶得上她儿子两个人(那么能干)。

My calculator was not the machine (**that**) it had been.
(Schwann) 我的计算器当时已不是原来那样了。

If he is the murderer (**that**) I think him (to be), we've done no more than is just. (Schibsbye) 如果他就是我认为的那个凶手,我们所做的就都是正当的。

作状语的 that 可省略(参见 7.5):

What's the time when/(**that**)/at which he usually arrives?
(CGEL) 他通常什么时间到?

The speed (**that**) he drives! I'm surprised he's not killed himself.
(LDCE) 他以那样的速度开车竟没死,我感到很吃惊。

Is it not high time (**that**) this question should be gone into?

(should be 即 shall be 的虚拟形式, 现更常用 was) 难道现在还不是时候该对这个问题认真研究一下吗?

如果一个先行词后有两个(或多个)并列的定语从句, 则第一个作宾语的关系代词可省略, 而其他作宾语的关系代词不省略:

She put up three big tile-roofed rooms with the money (that) she made by selling pigs and that her father earned from hair-cutting. 她用卖猪的钱和她父亲理发赚的钱盖起了三间屋顶铺瓦的大房子。

The best play (that) Shakespeare wrote, but which I haven't read, is probably *King Lear*. 莎士比亚写的最好剧本可能是《李尔王》, 但我没读过。

定语从句中, 如包含着表说话人主观看法或说明的语气状语短句, 关系代词可省略:

I don't think I ever worked on anything (that) **I thought** was terrible really. 我想我没做过自认为真是非常差劲的事。

I've climbed mountains by routes (which/that) **the guide said** were impassable. 我爬过一些山, 所经路线向导曾说是不能通过的。

非限制性定语从句中, 关系代词不能省:

I spoke to Dr. Spolsky, **whom** I met after the inquest. (CGEL) (非限制性定语从句中作宾语, 较少用 who, 不用 that) 我是在验尸之后见的斯波斯基医生的, 并和他谈了一下。

Anna is a vegetarian, **which** no one else is in our family. (ib) (which 表类属, 不用 who/that) 安娜是个素食者, 可我们家其他人都不是。

关系代词作主语时, 有两种情况也可省略 that, 即从句为 there is 存在句或主句为存在句及相仿结构时:

His father wanted to solve all the problems (that) **there were** in

the world. (Schibsbye) (there be 在这类句中本可有可无, 只是一个加强语气的附加结构, 因而无需关系代词予以连接) 他父亲想要解决世界上所有的问题。

You've seen all (that) **there is** to see. (Priestley) 可看的你都看过了。

The 9:15 is the fastest train (that) **there is** to Oxford. (Eckersley) 九点十五的车是到牛津去最快的列车。

以上各句从句为存在句; 以下各句主句为存在句或相仿结构:

There is a man (that) lives in China. (CGEL) 有一个住在中国的人。

There is some thing (that) keeps upsetting him. (ib) 有件事一直使他心烦意乱。

There's no one (that) enjoys good food more than he does. (Compton) 没有一个人比他更喜爱美味佳肴的了。

Here's Mr. Maldon (that) begs the favor of a word. (ib) 麦尔敦先生请您和他谈几句话。

It's the dry weather (that) does it. (Schibsbye) (分裂句) 这是天气干燥所致。

That/It was Cantercot (that) just went in. (ib) (分裂句) 刚才进去的那个人是坎特考特。

Who **was that/it** called a few minutes ago? (Schwann) (分裂句疑问形式) 几分钟前来访的那个人是谁?

7.10 “介词 + 关系代词”或 **that** 有时可代替关系副词 **when/where/why**

1) 某些情况下, 定语从句中的关系副词 **when/where/why** 可用“介词 + 关系代词”或 **that** 去替换:

I still remember the day **on which/that/when** I first met her. 我还记得我首次见到她的那天。

He came in 1960, **at which time/in which year/when** there were no theatres here yet. 他 1960 年来到这儿,那时这儿还没有剧院。

That's the place **in which/that/where** she was born. (CGEL) 那就是她出生的地方。

I don't know any place **where/(that)** you can get a better exchange rate. (Alexander)(习惯不用 in/at which) 我不知道你还有什么地方可以得到更优惠的汇率。

That's the reason **for which/why/that** she spoke. (CGEL) (较少用 for which) 那是她讲话的原因。

定语从句与先行词分开时,一般不用 that:

Then **the day** came **when** I had to leave. 我不得不离开的那天到来了。

用关系代词 that 去代替关系副词的情况,可理解为与 that 连用的介词被省略掉了:

It happened the day **when I was born/(that) I was born (on)**. 事情发生在我出生的那天。

This is the reason **why he came/(that) he came (for)**. 这就是她来的原因。

2) 有时用关系副词还是 that 影响着句子的重心。when 和 that 在这方面的差别较为明显:

He died on **the day when his son arrived**. (重心在 the day when his son arrived; 上文可能是 On which day did he die?) 他是他儿子到来的那天去世的。

He died on **the day that his son arrived**. (重心在 died 上; 上文可能是 What happened on the day that...?) 他儿子到来的那

天他去世了。

I'm looking forward to **the day when I retire**. (重心在 the day when I retire) 我正盼望退休的那天。

On **the day that** I retire I shall receive in cheque for a thousand pounds. (重心在 I shall receive... pounds.) 在我退休的那天, 我将得到一张一千镑的支票。

惯用句型 It's (high/about) time that... 的重心在 time 和 that 从句上:

It's about time (that) she found out what that reason is. (RHD) 大概她该了解一下那是什么原因了。

7.11 关系代词 as 与 which 比较

1) 限制性定语从句中, as(可指人也可指物)一般要与 as, so, such, the same 连用, 在从句中可作主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语等成分; 而 which(一般仅指物)无上述搭配上的限制, 在从句中可作主语、宾语等成分(参照 7.5):

There were not **so** many casualties **as was feared**. (Wood) (as 作主语; 这里 was 不能改成 were, 因为 as was feared 是惯用语) 没有人们担心的那么多伤亡。

He returned with tobacco, matches, and **such** provisions **as were needed**. (Davies) (as 作主语) 他带着烟草、火柴和所需供应品回来了。

There are **as** good fish in the sea **as ever came out of it**. (谚)(第二个 as 作主语) 海里的鱼多得很。(不要为错过一次机会失望, 还有其他机会。)

He would perhaps after tonight never be **the same** man **as** he was before. (as 作表语) 今晚之后他可能就不会是从前的他了。

He will marry **as pretty a girl as he can find**. (as 作宾语)他要和他所能找到的最漂亮的姑娘结婚。

This is **the same thing as we are in need of**. 这正是我们所需要的东西。(as 作介词宾语)

2)非限制性定语从句中,as 与 which 有时通用,可作主语、表语、宾语等成分:

He seemed a foreigner, **as/which** in fact he was. (which/as 指人表类属,参照 7.5)他看样子是个外国人,事实上他就是个外国人。

He was not sick, **which/as** some of the other passengers were. 他没有晕车,而其他一些乘客晕车了。

He thinks her answer incorrect, **as/which** it is. 他认为她的答案不正确,那答案实际上真是错的。

David writes novels, **which/as** you know. 大卫写小说,这你是知道的。

He married her, **which/as** was natural. 他和她结婚了,这是很自然的。

但是二者在非限制性定语从句中的用法上还存在着以下主要差别:首先,as 引导的从句可位于句首、句中或句末,而 which 引导的从句常常位于句末,极少不放在句首;其次,as 作主语时,一般见于主-系-表结构或被动结构中,而 which 并没有限制;再者,as 引导的从句内容与主句内容为相辅相承关系(而不是相反关系),which 却无此限制:

As he hoped, he saw the girl. (句首,不能用 which)正如他所希望的,他见到了那个女孩儿。

She did not, **as her friend had feared**, open the case. (句中,不用 which; as 指主句下文,不包括 not)她没有像她的朋友担心的那样,把项链盒子打开。

He arrived late, **which/as** was usual with him. (相辅相成关系; 比较 He arrived late, which was unusual.) 他迟到了, 这在他是经常的事。

He must be an African, **as may be seen** from the color of his skin. (as 在被动结构中作主语; 也可用 which) 他一定是非洲人, 这可以从他的皮肤颜色看出来。[比较 He saw the girl, **which delighted him**. 他见到了那位姑娘, 这使他很高兴。(从句为主一动一宾结构, 不能用 as)]

which 引导的非限制性定语从句, 有时放在主句中间或主句前, 指后边主句一部分或整个主句:

He hung around for hours and, **which** was worse, *kept me from doing my work*. 他在我这里呆了几个小时, 更糟糕的是, 他让我无法工作。

I'm interested in wine. And — **which** is the point — I know *that the wine is always there*. (指后边主句) 我对酒很感兴趣。而关键的问题是, 我知道这酒总有的喝。

Primarily, **which** is very notable and curious, I observe *that men of business rarely know the meaning of the word "rich"*. 首先, 我发现商人中很少有人懂得“富裕”这个词的意义, 这很明显又很奇怪。

7.12 when, where, how, why 引导问题从句与关系从句

四个副词 when, where, how, why 既可引导问题从句, 又可引导关系从句(在复合句中一般担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语之外各种主要名词性成分)。

1) 问题从句

i) 主语从句

How the book will sell depends largely on its author. 书的销路如何,很大程度上取决于书的作者。

When you get up doesn't matter/It doesn't matter when you get up. 你什么时候起床都没关系。

Why he did it remains a mystery/It remains a mystery why he did it. 他为什么做那件事,这是一个谜。

ii) 表语从句

The question is **how much it will cost**. 问题是那要花多少钱。

iii) 宾语从句

Someone has hidden my notebook, and I don't know **why and where (he has hidden it)**. 有人把我的笔记本藏起来了,我不知道为什么藏起来也不知道藏到哪儿了。

iv) 保留宾语从句

She was asked **how long the work would take**. 有人问她这件工作需要多长时间。

v) 带补语的宾语从句

Have you made it known **why the meeting has to be put off**? 你告诉大家会议推迟的原因了吗?

vi) 介语宾语从句

It all depends (on) **when and where you meet**. 那全取决于何时何地你们见面。

vii) 同位语从句

You have no idea **how worried I was!** (LDCE) 你不知道我多么担心!

My original question, **why he did it at all**, hasn't yet been answered. 我的最初问题(为什么他要做那件事)还没有得到回答。

2) 名词性关系从句

i) 主语从句

Why (The reason why) he shot her isn't important. (LDCE) 他枪杀她的原因并不重要。

ii) 表语从句

Before breakfast is **when (the time when) I do my best work.** (CGE) 早饭前我干工作精力最充沛。

Home is **where your family and friends are.** 家就是家人与朋友所在的地方。

iii) 宾语从句

I remember **when (the time when) it happened.** 我记得那件事发生的时间。

I'll never forget **how (the way in which/the way that) you sang and danced that night.** 我将永远不会忘记你那天夜里唱歌和跳舞的情景。

iv) 保留宾语从句

They were shown **how (the way in which) it was done.** 有人指点给他们那工作的做法。

带补语的宾语从句:

He has never made public **when and where they meet regularly.** 他从来没有公开他们定期会面的时间和地点。

v) 介词宾语从句

I'll wait till **when we meet again.** 我将一直等到我们再次会面。

He lives ten miles from **where I'm living.** 他住的地方离我住的地方有十英里。

vi) 同位语从句

Let us know your college address, **where you live during the term/in term time.** 告诉我们你在学院的地址,就是在学期当中你住的地方。

连接副词 whenever, wherever, however 不像 whatever 等连接代词那样用来引导名词关系从句, 而仅引导状语从句, 如 When/Whenever (I am) in doubt, I consult the dictionary. 有疑问时/无论何时有疑问, 我就查字典。

Exercise 7

I. 填入适当的关系代词或疑问代词或 wh-形式连接代词:

1. _____ locked the door remains a mystery.
2. She is a very diligent pupil, _____ her sister is not.
3. I don't know _____ these children are.
4. He is clever and witty, but that is not _____ I value him for.
5. She is very attentive, _____ he rarely is.
6. The room in _____ I found myself was very large and lofty.
7. Please tell me _____ way you will come.
8. The novel is the most laughable story _____ has ever been written.
9. The crew, _____ were all asleep, forgot to hoist a lantern.
10. At his house I met my cousin, with _____ I talked for two hours.
11. Sally Smiles, _____ cosmetic company has been in the news a great deal recently, has resigned as director.
12. Lend me _____ reference books you have on the subject.
13. I'll just say _____ come into my mind.
14. _____ you choose, the others will be offended.
15. The house _____ roof was damaged has now been re-

paired.

16. The plane may be several hours' late, in _____ case there's no point in our waiting.
17. You should wear _____ dress suits you best.
18. That would permit 700,000 French citizens living overseas to vote in _____ district they chose.
19. One should stick to _____ one has begun.

II. 填入省略去的关系代词:

1. Did you notice the picture your brother was looking at?
2. The man I sent for will come immediately.
3. Here is the article I referred to.
4. I don't know any place you can get a better exchange rate.
5. That's Jack's brother just went by.
6. John has told his mother all there is to tell.

III. 选择最佳答案:

1. Helen was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others, _____, of course, made the others jealous.
A. who B. that C. what D. which
2. The language _____ he told these stories shocked us almost as much as the crimes that he described.
A. in which B. in that
C. with which D. with that
3. All _____ is a continuous supply of the basic necessities of life.
A. what is needed B. for our needs
C. the thing needed D. that is needed

4. The performance was so nice that the dancer gave artistic joy to those _____ were watching.
A. whom B. who C. which D. whose
5. You will want two trees about ten feet apart, from _____ to suspend your tent.
A. there B. them C. which D. where
6. No one would have time to read or listen to an account of everything _____ going on in the world.
A. it is B. as is C. there is D. what is

IV. 把下列句子翻译成英语:

1. 我不在家时,谁一直在这个屋里呢?(用疑问词+ever)
2. 无论谁来,告诉他们我很忙。
3. 你认为哪个花瓶更漂亮呢?
4. 他是一个说话可以信赖的人。(用定语从句)
5. 我们所见的每一样东西都令人很感兴趣。

第八章 否定所指和否定范围

8.1 either(由代词转作否定副词)与 also/too 用于否定句

1) 在上文为否定句而下文表示“…也不…”时;通常使用“not...either”这一结构,但是“also/too...not...”也可表示类似含义,这时 also 或 too 要置于否定结构之前。比较:

You did not come, and he did not (come), **either**. (比较 ...and neither did he.) 你没来,他也没来。

You did not come, and he **also(too)** did not (come). (井上)(含义同上)

I can not swim **either**. 我也不会游泳。

I, **too**, can not swim. (RHD) (含义同上)

She has never seen it before **either**. 她以前也从未见过它。

She, **too**, has never seen it before. (井上)(含义同上)

2) 在上文为肯定句,下文表示“并非也…”、“没有也…”时,要使用“not...too”这一结构。例如:

Mr. A is dead. A 先生死了。

Mr. B is dead, too. B 先生也死了。

Mr. B is not dead, too. (井上)(不用 either) B 先生也没死。

I had always supposed that I should enter the law, but my three brothers, much older than I, were practising it and there did not seem room for me, **too**. (井上)(不用 either) 我曾经一直设想我应当进入法律界,但是比我大得多的三个哥哥都正在从事这一领域的工作,所以似乎没有我也从事这一领域工作

的余地了。

3) 有时,表示肯定意向的否定疑问句使用“not...too”,比较:
Won't you come, **too**? (Palmer)(希望对方回答 yes) 你不也来
吗?

Won't you come **either**? (不带肯定意向) 你也不来吗?

8.2 no 与 not 及 not any... 的比较

no 有双重词性,属性代词兼副词。

1) 属性代词 no 和名词或代词构成否定,相当于 not any/not a;
not 作为副词,和助动词或联系动词一起构成否定句式:

There is **no letter** for you/There **isn't a letter** for you. (CGEL)
没有你的信。

I've seen **no one**/nobody/I **haven't seen any one**/anybody.
(Alexander) 我还没看见任何人。

I've got **no time**/I **haven't got any time**. (ib) 我没有时间。

以上各句,所对应的 no... 及 not any/a... 在意义上基本相同。
但有时用 no 或用 not,意义上却有较大差别。比较:

a. He is **no teacher**. (CGEL) (no = not at all, not in any de-
gree) 他根本不是个当老师的材料。

b. He **is not a teacher**. (ib)(中性地陈述事实)他不是老师。

a. She is **no fool**. (CGEL) (no fool = very intelligent) 她可
不是傻子!(她很聪明。)

b. She **is not a fool**. (ib) 她不是傻子(是正常人)。

a. They paid **no tax** this year. (They certainly should have
done so!) (CGEL) 今年他们没缴税。(他们本应缴税!)

b. They **didn't pay any tax** this year. (CGEL) 今年他们没上
税。

2) not 否定名词短语(及其他短语),常用在含对比成分的句子中。以下各句都不能换成 no:

I want you to fly **not the green flag** but the blue one. / I want you to fly the blue flag **not the green one**. 我不想让你挂那面绿旗,而想让你挂那面蓝旗。/我想让你挂那面蓝旗而不是绿旗。(比较 We shall not fly the green flag but the blue one.)

Ask the vicar, **not his wife**. (Swan) 问牧师,而不是问他的妻子。

The students were on strike, but **not the teachers**. (Swan) 学生罢课了,而不是老师罢教了。

I can see you tomorrow, but **not on Thursday or Friday**. (Swan) 明天我可以和你见面,但不是星期四或星期五。

Ask **not what your country can do for you**, ask what you can do for your country. (CGEL) 不要问你的国家可以为你做什么,而要问你可以为你的国家做什么。

I come to bury Caesar, **not to praise him**. (I come not to praise Caesar but to bury him.) (RWRT) 我是来埋葬凯撒,而不是来赞扬他。(我来不是为了赞扬凯撒,而是来埋葬他。)

A man of words and **not of deeds** is like a garden full of weeds. (谚) 一个人光说不干,就像花园只有野草一片。

3) no 引导的名词短语放在句首表示较强的否定,not 与不定冠词“a+单数事物名词”连用(一般不与 any 连用)也可放在句首表示很强的否定意味:

No cigarette is completely harmless. (Swan) 没有任何一种香烟是完全无害的。

No tourists came to little Crudthorpe that summer. (ib) 那年夏季根本没有游客来到克路德索帕这个小地方。

No medicine can cure folly. (谚) 无药能治愚。

No man is born wise. (谚) 没人生来就是聪明的。

Not a star was to be seen. (RHD) 一颗星星也看不见。

Not a single animal will be alive there. (RHD) 没有任何一个动物能在那里存活。

Although autumn was well advanced, **not a leaf** had fallen from the trees. (Mansfield) 尽管已是深秋, 还没有一片叶子从树上落下。

Not a glass was raised all along the bar. 酒吧中无一人举起酒杯。

4) no 可作副词与形容词或副词的比较级连用, 表示 not any... , not... at all:

Some people can eat what they like and get **no fatter**. (Swan) 有些人想吃什么就吃什么, 却一点儿不变胖。

He went **no further** (than the station). (Palmer) 他(走到火车站)不再往前走了。

It is **no faster** to go there by train than by car. (Eckersley) 乘火车去那儿比乘汽车去那儿一点儿也不快。

You will be **no worse** for having had the experience. (Eckersley) 你不会因为有过这样的经历而处境更糟。[比较 You are none the worse for the experience; in fact, you are all the better. (ib)]

no 和某些形容词连用, 也可表示 not... at all:

I hadn't seen him for fifteen years, but he was **no different**. (Swan) 我十五年没见到他了, 但他一点儿也没变。

But this is **no unimportant** question, my dear Mr. Holmes. (LDCE) 亲爱的福尔摩斯先生, 可这绝非无关紧要的问题。

I'm **no good** at tennis. (Swan) 打网球我一窍不通。(比较 I'm not good at tennis. 我不擅长打网球。)

(That is) a question of **no great** importance. (LDCE) (那是个)

不怎么重要的问题。

She was an actress of **no mean** ability. (RHD) 她是个很有能力的演员。

5) 在表示禁止时,常将属性代词 **no** 与动名词连用,而不用 **not**。
例如:

The sign said "**No parking**". (CGEL) 告示上写着“禁止停车”。

Sorry — there's **no smoking** in the waiting-room. (Swan) 对不起,候诊室内不准吸烟。

No littering. No spitting. (PEG) 禁止乱扔脏物。禁止随地吐痰。

8.3 **no more... than/not... any more than** 与 **not more... than**

1) **not** + 比较级 + **than** 一般只是中性地陈述事实,“...不如...”:
I'm **not more foolish than** you. 我不比你傻(也许还精明些)。

I have **not more than** 50 dollars with me. 我身上带的不超过 50 美元。(也许还少些)

This machine is **not better than** that one. 这台机器不如那台好。

(那台可能质量很好。也可能并不太好,只是胜于这台)

2) **no** + 比较级 + **than** 表示“和...同样不”。例如:

I'm **no more foolish than** you. 我和你一样不傻。

I have **no more than** 50 dollars with me. 我身上仅有 50 美元。
(暗示数量少)

This machine is **no better than** that one. 这台机器和那台机器一样不好。

She is **no more a fool than** you (are). (CGEL) 她和你一样,也不傻。

He is **no more a writer than** a painter. 他既不是画家, 同样也不是作家。

A(The) whale is **no more a fish than** a(the) horse is. (RHD) 鲸不是鱼类就像马不是鱼类一样。

He could **no more** write without tobacco **than** without air. (RHD) 他写作时, 离开烟叶就像离开空气一样写不出来。

He is **no more fit** to be a minister **than** a school boy would be. (LDCE) 他不适于当部长, 就像一个小学生不适于此职一样。(no more fit 比 no fitter 更强调对比)

He is **no more rich than** poor. (RHD) 他不穷也不富。(两个形容词比较时, 比较级形式一般用 more... 形式, 而不用 -er 形式)

not... any more than 与 no more... than 意义基本相同:

Work is **not** the object of life **any more than** play is. (RHD) 工作不是生活的目的, 就像玩儿不是生活的目的。一样。

Nations are **not** to be judged by the size **any more than** individuals. 国家不能以大小来评价, 就像人不能以身高来评价一样。

It's no use asking me. I don't know **any more than** you do. (Du Maurier) 问我没有用。我知道的不比你多。(你知道的也不多)

8.4 neither 由代词转作否定副词与 nor 用作否定连词

1) 否定副词 neither 与连词 nor 引起倒装句, 表示“...也不...”。它们的上文一般表示否定含义:

用 neither:

John didn't see the accident and **neither** did Mary. (CGEL) (...)

and Mary didn't either.) 约翰没有看到那场事故, 玛丽也没有。

She wasn't angry and **neither** was I. (ib) 她没有生气, 我也没有。

"I can't swim." "**Neither** can I / **Me neither**." (LDCE) (不说 * Me nor.) "我不会游泳。" "我也不会。"

If she doesn't want it, **neither** do I. (RHD) 若她不想要, 我也不想要。

用 nor:

I didn't see it, **nor** did you. (Palmer) 我没有看见, 你也没有。

He can't do it; **nor** can I, **nor** can you, **nor** can anybody. (ALD) 他不能做; 我也不能, 你也不能, 任何人都不能。

nor 作为连词一般不再与连词 and/but 连用, 尤其是美国英语中, 例如:

I'm not reading it today, **nor/and neither** did I yesterday.

(Long) 我今天没有读它, 昨天也没有。

neither/nor 引起的倒装句, 若本句主语与上文句子主语不同, 则一般是对不同主语的比较; 若上下句主语相同, 则是对句子其他部分的比较:

The first one wasn't good and **neither** was the second (one).

(ALD) 第一个不好, 第二个也不好。

I don't know, **nor** do I care. (Palmer) 我不知道, 也不关心。

在主语不同的情况下, 有时既是对不同主语的比较, 也同时是对句子其他部分的比较:

They never forgave him for the insult, **nor** could he rid himself of feelings of guilt for having spoken that way. (CGEL) 他们决不会原谅他的羞辱之词, 他自己也无法摆脱因那样说话而引起的愧疚之感。

有时,在正式严肃的语体中,即使第一个分句没有否定含义,第二个分句也可用 *nor*,而不用 *neither*:

This unique product carries a brand name that represents an entire country; **nor** is this an accident. (CGEL) (= ...“and this is no accident.”) 这种独特产品印有代表整个国家的商标;这也不是偶然的。

2) *neither* 与 *nor* 可用作复合并列连词,表示“既不...也不...”:

David **neither** loves Joan, **nor** wants to marry her. (CGEL) (连接谓语) 大卫既不爱琼,也不想和她结婚。(比较 David doesn't love Joan, *nor/and* neither does he want to marry her.)

He could **neither** stand up **nor** sit down. (ALD) (连接谓语) 他既站不起来也坐不下去。

She had **neither** read/had read **neither** the book **nor** the reviews. (ib) (连接宾语) 他既没有读过那本书,也没有读过那些评论。

That is **neither** my fault **nor** yours. (Walpole) (连接表语) 那既不是我的错,也不是你的错。

She was **neither** clever **nor** stupid, but good enough at her work. (Maugham) (连接表语) 她既不聪明也不笨,但工作干得相当好。

Dinny walked swiftly, looking **neither** to right **nor** left. (Galsworthy) (连接状语) 丁妮走得很快,既不朝左看也不朝右看。

Paul came just at the right time, **neither** too early **nor** too late. (DAI) (连接状语) 保罗正好按时到,既不早也不晚。

Neither he **nor** they are wholly right. (Eckersley) (连接主语) 他和他们都不全对。(谓语和邻近的主语在数上保持一致)

Neither you **nor** I am (or **Neither I nor** you are) wrong. (RHD)
(连接主语)无论是你还是我,都不错。

Neither...nor...不能引导并列两个分句,如不说 * Neither Peter wanted the responsibility, nor his wife did. 要说 Neither Peter nor his wife wanted the responsibility. (CGEL) 或 Peter didn't want the responsibility any more than his wife did. 彼得不愿担此责任,他的妻子也不愿承担。

下面结构中的 **neither** 和 **nor** 既有连接作用,同时又具有副词作用:

Sam **neither** has long hair, **nor** does he wear jeans. (CGEL) 山姆既不留长头发,也不穿牛仔裤。(比较 Sam neither has long hair nor wears jeans.)

Mary was **neither** happy, **nor** was she sad. (ib) 玛丽既不高兴,也不难过。(比较 Mary was neither happy nor sad.)

They have **neither** replied to my letters, **nor** have they answered my telephone. (ib) 他们既没有给我回信,也没有给我回电话。

3) **nor** 单独用作并列连词(一般在 not/no/never 等之后):

The job can not be done by you, **nor** (by) me, **nor** (by) anyone else. (LLCE) 这个工作你做不了,我也做不了,任何人都做不了。

He had no friends, **nor** acquaintances, **nor** did he make any. (London) 他没有朋友,也没有熟人,他也不结交任何人。

For ten days he did not see Tanis, **nor** telephone to her. (Lewis) 十天来他没有见到泰妮斯,也没有给她打电话。

The house was never clean, **nor** tidy. (Wells) 这个房子从来都不干净,也不整洁。

8.5 部分否定

不定代词像 *all, both, every, everyone, everybody, everything* 等及某些副词如 *everywhere, always, altogether* 等和 *not* 连用时,构成的否定常常是部分否定:

All bread is not baked in one oven. (谚) 人生性各异,不能强求一致。(not 指向 *all*, 相当于 *Not all bread is baked...*, 现代英语中后者是更常用方式)

Not all men are hardworking. (RHD) 不是所有的人都努力工作。(比较 *None of them is hardworking.* 他们所有的人工作都不努力。)

All is not gold that glitters. (谚) 闪闪发亮的不都是金子。

Every man cannot be a hero. (谚) (*Not every man can be a hero.*) 并非人人皆可成为英雄。

He **didn't** attend **every** class. (RHD) (*He attended not every class.*) 他不是每节课都去上。(比较 *He attended no class.* 他什么课都没去上。)

Not every horse can run fast. (ALD) 不是每匹马都跑得快。

I **don't** want **both** (books). (RHD) (*I want only one, not both.*) 我不是两本书都想要。(比较 *I want neither of the books.* 两本书我都不想要。)

Not both of the children succeeded, and only one of them received a prize. 两个孩子没有都成功,只有一个获奖了。

Both of the books are **not** helpful. 这两本书不都有用。

Such a thing is **not** found **everywhere**. (*Such a thing is found somewhere.*) 这样的事并不是哪儿都能碰到。(比较 *Such a thing is found nowhere.* 这样的事哪儿也不会碰到。)

You have to work on your own, and **don't always** ask for help from others. (... though you can sometimes ask for help from others.) 你得独立工作,不要总是让别人来帮助。

That is **not altogether** bad. (That is bad in a way.) 那并不完全是坏事。

all, both 等因说话时的语调和重音不同,既可构成部分否定,也可构成全部否定:

I wasn't listening all the time. (CGEL) (not 仅指向谓语动词 = For the whole time, I wasn't listening.) 我一直都没听着。

I wasn't listening all the time. (ib) (not 指向 all the time, = It is not true that I was listening all the time.) 我不是一直都在听着。

上述那些代词如与带否定前缀的形容词或含否定意义的动词连用时,则构成全部否定:

All this is unnecessary. (CGEL) (None of this sort of bothers are necessary.) 所有这一切都不必要。

Both are unwise. (ib) (Neither is wise.) 两个都不聪明。

Everybody failed the exam. (ib) (Nobody passed the exam.) 谁都没通过考试。

He forgets everything. (ib) (He remembers nothing.) 他什么都没记住。

Every landlord was unkind to the peasantry. (ib) (No landlord was kind to the peasantry.) 没有哪个地主对农民是友善的。

some 与 not 连用构成否定也是部分否定:

I didn't understand **some** of the lectures/some of the information. (Alexander) 这些讲座/信息中我有些不理解。(如用 any of... 则为全部否定)

I don't like **some** of them. 他们之中我有些不喜欢。(比较 I

don't like any of them.)

They have **not** learned **some** of these rules of electricity. 这些电学定律中,他们有些没学过。

8.6 局部否定(局限否定)

涉及代词的还有局部否定与全面否定的不同表达法。对比于全面否定,局部否定局限于对一个词或短语的否定(从而构成否定的短语),并不否定全句。

1) not 否定带前缀的形容词或副词,比直接使用形容词/副词语气委婉:

She is a **not unattractive** woman. 她还是个有些吸引力的女人。
(她处在 unattractive 与 attractive 之间的某个点上, fairly attractive)

They are paying a **not inconsiderable** amount in rent. (They're paying a rather considerable amount in rent.) 他们在付出一笔数目不小的房租。

The announcement was followed by a **not unexpected** silence. (... a somewhat expected silence.) 声明宣布之后,出现了并非意外的沉默。

They visit us **not infrequently**. (... fairly frequently.) 他们还是常常来拜访我们。

He writes **not inelegantly**. 他写得还是比较优雅的。

not 还可否定某些语气状语:

Not unnaturally, we rejected their complaint. 很自然地我们拒绝了他们的申诉。

Not surprisingly, they missed the train. 并不令人吃惊,他们错过了火车。

2) “not + 程度副词”修饰形容词或副词:

They own two **not very fierce** dogs. 他们有两只不怎么凶猛的狗。(= rather tame)

I saw a **not too sympathetic** report about you. 我见到了一份对你不太同情的报告。(= rather unsympathetic)

I visit them **not very often**. (I don't visit them very often. 对“谓语 + 状语”的否定) 我不常拜访他们。

Janet arrived **not much earlier** than Bob. (Janet didn't arrived much earlier than Bob.) 珍妮特到得比鲍勃早不了多少。

Derek drives **not as well as** expected. (Derek doesn't drive as well as expected.) 德瑞克开车没有人们设想地那么好。

3) not 修饰表示距离、时间的度量状语:

They live not far from us. (fairly near; They don't live far away from us.) 他们住得离我们不远。

I saw Dave **not long ago**. (fairly recently) 我不久前见到了德伍。

4) not 可修饰数量词 a few, a little; little 也可以用 no 来修饰:

They have **not a few** eccentrics in their family. 他们家有很多古怪的人。

I sensed **not a little** hostility in his manner. 我感觉到他的举止之中带着很多敌意。

They displayed **no little** interest in her progress. (no little 比 not a little 语气强) 他们对她的进步显示出了很大的兴趣。

5) not 和 no (比 not 语气强)可修饰比较级 more, less 和 fewer 等:

You may take **no more than** an hour's break for lunch. 你仅可以休息一小时来吃午饭。(no more than an hour 暗示“过少”; not more than an hour 只是中性陈述事实)

They'll pay you **not less than** ten dollars an hour. 他们每小时会

付你不少于10美元。(not less than ten dollars 为中性陈述事实; no less than ten dollars 暗示“很多”)

I have been able to collect **no fewer than** sixty signatures for the petition. 我已为这次请愿征集到了六十多个签名。(no fewer than 暗示“很多”; not fewer than 为中性陈述)

6) 介词短语可由否定词来否定:

We cleared the table **in no time**. 我们马上就把桌子清理了。

She replied **with not a moment's** hesitation. (比较 without a moment's hesitation) 她没有片刻的犹豫就作了答复。

It was a decision **of no consequence**. [...of not any consequence (at all).] 那是个根本无关紧要的决定。

7) not 构成局部否定与 but 连用:

They want **not** your pity **but** your help. (比较 They don't want your pity but your help. 分句否定) 他们想要的不是你的同情, 而是你的帮助。

You should pay attention **not** to what they say **but** to what they do. 你不应当注意他们所说的, 而应当注意他们所做的。

I saw **not** one officer **but** three. 我见到的不是一个官员, 而是三个。

8) 局部否定出现在压缩的名词短语中:

No news is good news. (Receiving no news is good news.) 没消息就是好消息。(没意外就好)

Something is better than **nothing**. (Having something is better than having nothing.) 有一点儿总比一点儿没有好。

9) 在局部否定中, 句首的否定成分并不引起倒装。比较下面各组的前句(局部否定)和后句(倒装, 全面否定):

- a. **In no time** we cleared the table. (We cleared the table within a short time.) 一会儿我们就把桌子收拾干净了。
- b. **At no time** was war as imminent as now. (War wasn't as imminent as now at any previous time.) 没有哪个时候比这时更可能爆发战争了。
- a. **Not even ten years ago** you could see such a film. (You could see such a film as recently as ten years ago.) 距现在甚至不到十年之前,你就能看到这样一部电影。
- b. **Not even ten years ago** could you see such a film. (You couldn't see such a film even ten years ago.) 甚至十年前你还看不到这样一部电影。
- a. (Even) **with no coaching** he will pass the exam. (He will pass the exam even without coaching.) (甚至)没有人辅导,他也能通过考试。
- b. **With no coaching** will he pass the exam. (Whatever coaching is provided will not enable him to pass the exam.) 不管什么样的人辅导他,他也通不过考试。
- a. **Not too often/Very rarely**, Mary received letters from her brother. 玛丽收到过弟弟的信,只是信不常来。
- b. **Never too often/Very rarely** did Mary receive letters from her brother. (趋于全面否定)玛丽很少收到弟弟的来信。

上面不倒装的局部否定句(全句表肯定)之后,如加用附加问句,要用否定的附加性问句。而倒装的否定句(全句表否定)之后,则用肯定的附加问句。如:

In no time we cleared the table, **didn't we?** 我们一会儿就把桌子收拾干净了,不是吗?

At no time was war as imminent as now, **was it?** 那个时候也没有像此时这样更可能爆发战争了,是不是?

8.7 在有“局部否定”的句子中可用肯定词语

否定句中一般要用非肯定词语,但句中否定范围有限时(不是否定全句),否定范围以外的部分还要用肯定词语:

I *didn't* listen to **some** of the speakers. (CGEL) (There were some of the speakers that...) 有些演说者(的演讲)我没听。(比较 I *didn't* listen to *any* of the speakers. 那些演说者们的演讲我都没听。)

I *didn't* understand **some** of the lectures/some of the information. (Alexander) 这些讲座/信息我有些不理解。

She's a *not unattractive* woman in **some** ways. (CGEL) (She is a fairly attractive... ; 不能改用 any) 在某些方面,她还是个有吸引力的女人。(比较 She is *not an attractive* woman in **any** respect. 她在哪方面都不是个有吸引力的女人。)

They made **some** *not unintelligent* observations. (CGEL) (They made **some** fairly intelligent observations.) 他们作了一些具有一定见解的评论。

Some people have *no manners*. (Alexander) (**There are some** people who have no manners.) 有些人没有礼貌。

Some people *don't like that book*. (LLCE) (**There are some** people who don't like that book.) 有些人不喜欢那本书。

8.8 规范英语和非规范英语中的双重否定

英语中,有时一个句子出现两个否定词,这两个否定词在意义上互相抵消,而使得全句在文意上是肯定的:

Not many people have **nowhere** to live. (CGEL) (Most people

have somewhere to live.) 不是很多人都没地方住。

No one has nothing to offer to society. (ib) (Everyone has something to offer to society.) 没有谁对社会什么贡献也没有。(每个人对社会都会有所贡献)

Nobody did nothing. (Alexander) (Everyone did something.) 没有人什么也不做的。(每个人都做些事)

Not all imperatives have no subject. (CGEL) (Some imperatives have a subject.) 不是所有的祈使句都没有主语。(一些祈使句有主语)

Never before had none of the committee members supported the mayor. (ib) (Some of the committee members had always supported the mayor before.) 以前从未有过委员会成员都不支持市长的情况。(以前总有一些委员会成员支持市长)

None of us have **never** told lies. (All of us have told lies at some time.) (ib) 我们中没有一个没说过谎。(我们中谁都说过谎) 这些双重否定句当然表达肯定意义,但在句法上仍是否定的,所以如果接附加问句,附加问句要求用肯定形式。如:

Not all imperatives have no subject, **do they?** 不是所有祈使句都没有主语,对吗?

有时双重否定可跟在情态动词或助动词之后:

I **can't not** obey her. (更自然的说法是: I can't help obeying her/ I can't help but obey her.) 我不能不服从她。

You **can't not** admire him. 你不能不羡慕他。

She **didn't not** like them. (She didn't dislike them.) 她不是不喜欢他们。

They **don't often not** remember her birthday. (They don't often fail to remember her birthday.) 他们不是经常记不住她的生日。

He **hasn't ever not** understood a lecture. (He hasn't ever failed to understand a lecture.) 他没有听不懂讲座的时候。

非规范英语中的双重否定完全不同于上述规范英语中的双重否定或三重否定。非规范英语中,后出现的否定词相当于规范英语中的非肯定词,而不把前面的否定词义抵消掉。

非规范: **No one never** said **nothing** to **nobody**. (CGEL)

规范: **No one** ever said **anything** to **anybody**. (ib) 没人对谁说什
么话。

非规范: I **don't** want **nothing**. (Swan)

规范: I **don't** want **anything**. / I want nothing. (ib) 我不想要任
何东西。

非规范: I **don't** owe you **nothing**. (RWRT)

规范: I **don't** owe you **anything**. (ib) 我什么也不欠你的。

Exercise 8

I. 用 **not any**, **not a...** **not at all** 等替换句中的 **no** 或其复合词, 改
写下列句子:

1. We have **no** books.
2. Smith is **no** architect.
3. I'm **no** wiser now.
4. He'll meet us **nowhere**.
5. **No** man can be seen in the street.

II. 把下列部分否定句翻译成汉语:

1. We didn't see everything in the school.
2. They haven't read both of the books.
3. These kind of plants are not found everywhere.

4. All the books are not interesting.
5. Opportunities come to all, but all are not ready for them when they come.

III. 把下列句子翻译成英语:

1. 我也不喜欢这部电影。(too 或 either)
2. 他无勇也无谋。(no more... than)
3. 约翰和杰克都不愿去。
4. 他们喜欢的是体育,而不是音乐。(What they like is...)
5. 一会儿我就洗完了衣服。(in no time)

IV. 选用代词填空(all, any, everyone, everything, it, her, no, other, same, she, that, what, you):

Anne Sullivan tried to introduce Helen Keller to language in the _____ (1) manner, by means of manual alphabet. _____ (2) will read Miss Keller's account of _____ (3) first awakening to the idea of language, when _____ (4) finally realized the connection between the sensations in _____ (5) hands and the real thing in the world, and understood _____ (6) the sign W-A-T-E-R, spelled into _____ (7) hand, represented the cool liquid _____ (8) was flowing over her _____ (9) hand.

From _____ (10) moment, Helen eagerly asked the names for _____ (11) she touched, and _____ (12) mind took in knowledge so fast that _____ (13) teacher could hardly keep up with _____ (14). But at _____ (15) time did Miss Sullivan talk to Helen in a simplified, unnatural manner. She always talked to _____ (16) in complete, correct sentences, and

_____ (17) asked _____ (18) in the family to do the _____ (19), even though _____ (20) knew Helen would not consciously understand _____ (21) being spelled into her hand.

Helen, like _____ (22) other child, understood _____ (23) interested _____ (24) at the moment. The rest went into _____ (25) unconscious level of her mind, to reappear when she was ready to use _____ (26). Nine months after learning _____ (27) first word, Helen was able to write complete sentences in _____ (28) letters.

第九章 肯定、非肯定词语和肯定意向

9.1 肯定句中用肯定词语 **some** 等

1) 肯定句中用 **some** 及其复合词:

Ask **some** boys to help you. (Thorndike) 让一些男孩子来帮你。

I've read that story before in **some** book or other. (ALD) 我在一本书中读过那个故事。

Somebody told me you were coming. (LLCE) 有人告诉我你要来。

Someone wants to see you. (RHD) 有人想要见你。

Know **something** of everything and everything of something. (谚) 要涉猎百科而精通一艺。

He did the work **somehow**; I don't know how. (LLCE) 他以某种办法做了那件工作; 我不知道他是怎么做的。

He lives **somewhere** near here. (ib) 他住在靠近这儿的一个地方。

He answered **somewhat** nervously. (ALD) 他回答得有点紧张。

2) 肯定句中用 a long time, a long way, a few, a little 等 (相应非肯定句中要用的词语见 9.2):

I've been waiting for **a long time** for the opportunity. (Swan) 这个机会我已等了很长时间。

He was **a long time** reaching Stanhope Gate. (Galsworthy) 他用了很长时间才到达斯坦侯普门。

They live **a long way** from us. (CGEL) 他们住得离我们很远。

The roots go **a long way** down. (ALD) 根向下扎得很深。

A few of the survivors of the earthquake are still living. (RHD)
一些地震幸存者仍然活着。

He had **a few** grey hairs. (Sinclair) 他有一些灰白头发。

There were quite **a few** students absent from class today. (Whitford)
今天有很多学生没来上课。(或说 a good few/not a few students)

Give me **a little** of that wine. (LLCE) 给我一点儿那种酒。

A little help does a great deal. (谚) 帮个小忙会管大用。

a good many, a great deal, many, much 等用法见 6.1。

9.2 表疑问/否定/条件等非肯定句中用非肯定词语 any 等

1) 非肯定句中用 any 及其复合词:

Are there **any** letters for me? Any at all? (Close) 有我的信吗?
一封也没有?

(Has) **anybody anything** more to say? (Galsworthy) 还有谁有什么要说的吗?

He won't meet us **anywhere**. (CGEL) 在哪儿他也不会遇到我们。

I do not know **anyone** connected with the Exhibition. (Yeats) 我不认识任何同这个展览有关系的人。

If you're not doing **anything** tomorrow, how about going to the movies with me? (RHD) 如果你明天不做什么事,和我去看电影怎么样?

If you need **any** more money, please let me know. (Thomson) 如果你还需要钱的话,请向我说一声。

2) 非肯定句中用 long, far, few, little 等:

“Have you been working here **long**?” “No, not **long**.” (Swan)

“你在这儿工作很长时间了吗?” “时间不长。”

He that runs fast will not run **long**. (谚) 跑得快的人跑不了多久。

“Did you walk **far**?” “Yes, we walked a long way/much too far.” (LDCE) “你走得远吗?” “走得远/太远了。”

They don't live **far**/a long way from us. (CGEL) 他们住得离我们不远。

I have very **few** (chocolates) left. (LLCE) 我没剩下几块(巧克力)。

Little property, **little** care. (谚) 财少担心少。

Do you know **many** people in London? (Eckersley) 你在伦敦认识很多人吗?

If there is **much** rain, the ground will be flooded. (Neal) 如果雨水很多,地面就要被淹。

肯定句中一般不用 long/far 而多使用 a long time/way(见 9.1), 但与 too, as, enough 等副词连用的 far 或 long, 常常用在肯定句; 其比较级/最高级也常用于肯定句:

You've been sleeping **too long/long enough**. (ALD) 你睡得时间太长/够长了。

We've gone **far enough**. (Thomson) 我们走得够远了。

He went **as far as** Chicago. (RHD) 他远行到过芝加哥。

I can/can't stay **longer**/a long time. (CGEL) 我可以再呆会儿/呆很长时间/我不能再呆了/呆很长时间。

It's 5 miles away at **farthest**. (ALD) 最远有 5 英里之距。

very long 一般只用于非肯定句, 而 very far 却可用于肯定句中:

I can't stay (**very**) **long**. (CGEL) 我不能呆很长时间。

They live/don't live **very far**/too far/a long way from us. (ib) 他

们住得离我们很远/太远/不很远/不太远。

a long time 也用在否定句中,但和 long 的意义可能不同。使用前者,否定的焦点落在谓语动词上;使用后者,否定的焦点落在 long 上:

I haven't been here for **a long time**. (ALD) (It's a long time since I was last here.) 曾有很长时间我不在这儿。

I haven't been here **long**. (ib) 我到这儿时间不长。(I arrived here only a short time ago.)

He didn't speak for **a long time**. (Swan) (It was a long time before he spoke.) 很长时间他都没讲话了。

He didn't speak for **long**. (ib) (He spoke for only a short time.) 他讲话讲得时间不长。

9.3 非肯定词语和含蓄否定副词 **seldom, hardly, little** 等连用

意义否定而形式上并非否定的词语如 **hardly, seldom** 等之后一般要跟非肯定词语:

I **seldom** get any help. (CGEL) 我很少得到什么帮助。

She **hardly** eats anything, does she? (Swan) 她几乎不吃什么东西,是吗?

I **hardly** ever go out these days. (LDCE) 这些天我几乎不出去。(比较 **Hardly** ever do I go out these days.)

I can **barely** speak to any of my colleagues. (CGEL) 我几乎不能跟同事们说话。

Scarcely/Hardly anybody believes that. (Palmer) 几乎没有人相信那件事。(scarcely/hardly 连接属非肯定词语的代词时,即使放在句首,也不引起倒装)

Scarcely ever has the British nation suffered so much obloquy.

(ib) 英国几乎从未受过这么多的耻辱。(scarcely 连接非肯定时间状语 ever 而引起倒装)

Little did I dream of ever seeing you here. (RHD) 做梦我也没想到在这儿见到你。(little 引起倒装)

only 在某种程度上含否定的意思。当它强调作主语的名词短语时,该名词短语后面要和非肯定词语连用:

Only two of us had **any** experience in sailing. (CGEL) 我们仅有两人有航海经验。

In Britain, **only** the bite of the adder presents **any** danger. 在英国,只有被蝮蛇咬伤才会有危险。

但 only 所强调的名词短语之内只能用肯定词语:

Only some of us had any experience in sailing. (ib) 我们当中仅有少数人有航海经验。

9.4 非肯定词语代词 any, 其复合代词以及 ever, yet 等用于各种非肯定上下文

any, any-复合代词, ever, yet, either 等用在很多结构中,表示非肯定的含义。

1) 非肯定词语用于各种疑问句:

Have you **ever** been to Canada? / Have you been to Canada **yet**?

(Swan) 你去过加拿大吗? (一般肯定问句)

Doesn't **anyone** know the answer? (CGEL) 没有谁知道答案吗?

(一般否定问句)

When will we **ever** win any prizes? (ib) 什么时候我们才会得某种优胜奖呢? (特殊肯定问句)

Who hasn't had any coffee? (ib) 谁还没喝咖啡? (特殊否定问句)

2) 用于陈述否定句中:

He hasn't **ever** spoken to me. (MED) 他跟我没说过话。

You haven't **many** minutes to speak if you want to catch the train. (Eckersley) 你若想赶那趟火车,你就没多少时间说话了。

It's not time to go **yet**. (LLCE) 还不到去的时间。

3) 用于条件句中:

If you had been more careful or your wife **either**, your child wouldn't have been run over. (CGEL) 如果你细心点,或你妻子也细心点儿,你的孩子就不会让车辗过去。

If you **ever** see George, give him my kind regards. (Eckersley) 如果你见到乔治,代我向他表示问候。

If you have **many** things to do, we'll go without you. 如果你有很多事要做,我们就不带你去了。

4) 用于同级、比较级和最高级的比较句中:

She was full of talk as **ever**. (Swan) 她像以往一样健谈。

Sheila's behavior was becoming more than **ever** strange. (Snow) 希拉的行为变得比任何时候都更古怪。

She was happier than she had **ever** been. (Bennet) 她比以前任何时候都更快活。

He is one of the wittiest men I've **ever** come across. (Voynich) 他是我曾遇到过的最诙谐的人之一。

I have **yet** more exciting news for you. (LDCE) 我还有更令人兴奋的消息告诉你。

You must work harder **yet**. (Eckersley) 你还要更加努力地工作。

I have more stamps than I have **yet** shown you. (CGEL) 除了我给你看过的以外,我还有好多邮票。

5) 用于其他各种暗含非肯定意义的从句中:

It's *unlikely* that she has **ever** been to Scotland. (CGEL)(主语从句) 她不大可能去过苏格兰。

I *doubt* if he has read it **yet**. (ALD) (宾语从句) 我怀疑他是否已读了这一资料。

I *wonder* whether Mr. Black has **any** roses in his garden. (ALD) (宾语从句) 我不知道布莱克先生花园里是否有玫瑰。

Let us see if **anything** can be done for it. (RHD)(宾语从句) 让我们来看看是否可以为此做些什么。

I wonder if **many** people will be at the party. (Eckersley)(宾语从句) 我不知道是否会有很多人来参加聚会。

He denies I **ever** told him. (CGEL) (宾语从句) 他否认我曾告诉过他。

I doubt whether there **ever** was any such person. (MED)(宾语从句) 我怀疑是否有过这样的人。

Students who have **any** complaints should raise their hands. (CGEL)(含条件意义的定语从句, if students have **any**...) 哪些学生有意见要申诉就举手吧。

Whenever **anyone** was ill he installed himself as a sick-nurse. (Maugham) (含条件意义状语从句) 每当有人生病, 他就做起病人护理员该做的工作。

Take it before he says **anything**. (CGEL) (“... so that he doesn't say anything”; 由 before 引导的状语从句) 别等他开口(指责房间零乱), 先把这东西拿走。

6) 用于含否定意义的不定式短语及动名词短语中。常见于某些惯用非肯定结构内, 或 stop, avoid, forget, deny 等后的宾语短语里:

He's too old to play **any** rigorous games. (CGEL) 他年纪太大了, 参加不了运动剧烈的比赛。

I have **yet** to hear the story. (LDCE)(我至今尚未听到)我还要听听这事的经过。

To avoid **any** delay, please phone your order direct. (ALD) 为避免迟延,请直接打电话订货。

They bought a dog to prevent **any** burglaries. (ib) 他们买了一条狗来防盗。

I forgot to ask for **any** change. (CGEL) 我没要零钱。(根本未想到)(该句也可用 some, 表示曾想到要零钱,但后又忘了。)

He denied having **anything** to do with the accused man. 他否认与被告有牵连。

The lost travellers despaired of **ever** getting out of the desert alive. 迷路的旅行者,已失去活着走出沙漠的希望。

We must keep her from **ever** doing that. 我们必须坚持防止她那么干。

They stopped her from giving him **any** money. 他们阻止她给他钱。

7) 在含否定意义的副词、介词、形容词等之后:

Never have **any** of them been interested in music. (CGEL) 他们当中谁都未曾对音乐产生过兴趣。

We did the job without **any** difficulty. (ALD) 我们毫无困难地完成了那项工作。

I'm against going out **anywhere** tonight. (CGEL) 我反对今晚去任何地方。

We are unaware of **any** hostility. (ib) 我们没有意识到敌意。

9.5 肯定词语、非肯定词语和否定词语的对照

比较下面各组例句中肯定词语(上句)、非肯定词语(中句)和

否定词语(下句)的差别:

- a. We saw **some** fields and trees. (Palmer) 我们见到一些田地和树木。
 - b. We didn't see **any** fields or trees. 我们没见到田地和树木。
 - c. We saw **no** fields and trees. (语气较强)我们根本没见到田地和树木。
- a. He asked for paper and I gave him **some**. (Frisky) 他要纸,我给了他一些。
 - b. I didn't give him **any**. 我没有给他。
 - c. I gave him **none**. 我(一点儿)没有给他。
- a. I think I dropped **something**. (LDCE) 我想我掉了什么东西。
 - b. I don't think I dropped **anything**. 我想我没掉什么东西。
 - c. I think I dropped **nothing**. 我想我什么东西也没掉。
- a. There is **somebody** in the room. (Frisky) 房间里有人。
 - b. There isn't **anybody** in the room. 房间里没有人。
 - c. There is **nobody** in the room. 房间里没有人。
- a. She wants **someone** to look after her. (Snow) 她想找个人照顾她。
 - b. She doesn't want **anyone** to look after her. 她不想要人照顾她。
 - c. She wants **no one** to look after her. 她不想要人照顾她。
- a. I think we can manage that **somehow**. (Dreiser) 我想我们可以以某种方式办成那件事。
 - b. I don't think we can manage that in **any way/at all**. 我想我们怎么也办不成那件事。
 - c. I think we can in **no way** manage that. 我想我们怎么也办不成那件事。

- a. We'll go out **somewhere**. 我们要外出到某个地方去。
- b. We won't go **anywhere**. 我们哪儿也不去。
- c. We'll go **nowhere**. 我们哪儿也不去。
- a. He **sometimes/always** visits us. (CGEL) 他有时/不断看望我们。
- b. He **doesn't ever** visit us. 他从不看望我们。
- c. He **never** visits us. 他从不看望我们。
- a. I'm (**somewhat**) wiser now. (CGEL) 我现在明白(一些)了。
- b. I'm **not any** (the) wiser now. (虽然听到讲解,) 我现在还是不明白。
- c. I'm **none** the/no wiser now. (虽然听到讲解,) 我现在还是不明白。
- a. He saw **one man or the other**. (ib) 他见到了两个人中的一个。
- b. He **didn't see either** man. 两个人, 他谁也没见到。
- c. He saw **neither** man. 两个人他谁也没见到。
- a. He saw **one or the other** of the men. (ib) 他见到了这两人中的一个。
- b. He **didn't see either** of the men. 他没见到了这两人中的任何一个。
- c. He saw **neither** of the men. 他没见到了这两人中的任何一个。
- a. My finger **still** hurts. (RCD) 我的手指还疼呢。
- b. My finger **doesn't hurt any** more/longer. 我的手指不再疼了。
- c. My finger hurts **no** more/longer. 我的手指不再疼了。
- a. I've **already** seen that film. (ALD) 我已看过那部电影了。
- b. I **haven't** seen that film **yet**. 我还没看过那部电影。

- a. I can help (**to some extent**). (CGEL) 我能(在某种程度上)给予帮助。
- b. I can't help **at all**. 我一点也帮不上忙。
- a. We, **too** are going away. (Thorndike) (We are going away as well.) 我们也要离开这里。
- b. We are not going away **either**. 我们也不打算离开这里。
- a. Le Conte was right, and so are you, **at least** to an extent. (London) 勒康特是对的,你也是对的,至少某种程度上是这样。
- b. He was not **in the least** angry with me. (Shaw) 他一点也不生我的气。
- a. I've **more or less** succeeded. (Lewis) 我已或多或少地取得一定成就。
- b. I haven't succeeded **at all**. 我根本没有成功。
- a. I had **a little** difficulty in finding the house. (LLCE) 我找这所房子费了点儿事。
- b. I had **little** difficulty in finding the house. 我没有费多大事就找到了这所房子。
- a. I understood **a little** of what he said. 我对他说的理解一点儿。
- b. I understand **little** of what he said. 我对他说的几乎全不理解。
- a. She had **a few** eggs left. (LLCE) 她还剩下一些蛋。
- b. She had **few** eggs left. 她没剩下什么蛋。
- a. **A few** of the children were tired. 这些孩子中有几个累了。
- b. **Few** of the children were tired. 这些孩子中没有几个累的。

9.6 同一句中用两个以上非肯定词语

同一语句中可用两个以上非肯定词语。例如：

If **anyone ever** says that, pretend not to hear. (CGEL) 如果有人要那样说,就假装没听见。

He hasn't done **much yet**. (LLCE) 他还没做很多。

No, I don't understand **much** of the modern poetry, **either**. (RHD) 不,我对现代诗歌也理解不了多少。

I've never travelled **anywhere** by air **yet**. (CGEL) 我还没乘飞机到什么地方去过。

Not **many** of the refugees have **anywhere** to live **yet**. (CGEL) 已找到住处的难民为数不多。

I haven't **ever** been on **any** of the big liners, **either**. (CGEL) 这些大客机我也一架都没坐过。

I don't give **any** pocket money to **any** of my children at **any** time. (CGEL) 我在任何时候也不给我的任何一个孩子零花钱。(比较 I give no pocket money to any of my children at any time. / I give pocket money to none of my children at any time. / I hardly ever give any pocket money.)

9.7 表示质问或反驳的否定句中用肯定词语

在表示质问或反驳的否定句中,所用肯定词语实为重复对方的话,说话者的重音落在其前的否定词语上:

“You offered her **some** chocolates, didn't you?”“你给过她一些巧克力,对吗?”

“No, I did not/didn't/never offer her **some**/any chocolates.

(CGEL) (It is not true that I offered her **some** chocolates.)

“不,我没有给过她一些巧克力。”

“I understand she showed him **some** photographs.” “我知道她给他看了一些照片。”

“No, she didn't (show him **some/any** photographs).” (CGEL)

“不,她没给他看过照片。”

“You have **already** seen the film, didn't you?” “你已看过那部电影,是吗?”

“No, I haven't **already** seen the film/I haven't seen the film yet.” 不,我还没看过那部电影。

“I believe she is **somewhat** wiser for that.” “我相信她会因此弄明白些的。”

“I don't think she is **somewhat** wiser for that, is she?” “我不认为她会因此弄明白些,是不是?”

9.8 在含“肯定意向”的疑问句和条件句中用肯定词语

疑问句中一般使用非肯定词语。但如发问者期望实际的情况是肯定的,而不是对实况之肯定或否定持中立态度,则转而使用“肯定词语”。类似地,条件句中,如说话人期望实际情况构成肯定条件,也要转而使用肯定词语:

Have you got **a lot of** time/cards left? (ALD) 你还剩有很多时间/张牌吗?

Have you got **something** I could read? (ALD) 你有什么我可以读的东西吗?

May I have **some** (more) coffee? (Alexander) 我可以再喝一些咖啡吗?

If you want any/**some** help, let me know. (Swan) (用 **some** 更诚

息)如果你需要帮助,就告诉我。

If you put **some** pictures on the wall, the room will look bright.

(ALD) 如果你在墙上挂上一些画,房间看起来会明亮些。

(希望你挂上一些画)

Did **someone** call last night? (CGEL) 昨天晚上有人打电话来?

Do you live **somewhere** near Dover? (ib) 你住在多佛附近吗?

I'm not going back home tonight. Can you put me up **some-where**? (Walpole) 今天晚上我不回家。你能给我找个住的地方吗?

有时疑问句中使用肯定词语,是在对对方所提肯定情况表示惊讶、赞叹或疑问:

Is my coat dry **already**? That's quick! (Swan)(你说我的外衣已经干了) 我的外衣这就干了? 真是快呀!

Has the boat left already? (CGEL) 船已开走了吗?(倾向于肯定或对对方所说表示惊讶)[比较 Has the boat left **yet**? 船开走了吗?(没有倾向)]

否定疑问句,也可用肯定词语,表示极强的肯定意向:

Aren't there **some** stamps in that drawer? (DSD) 难道抽屉里就没有一些邮票了吗?(肯定有邮票)

Didn't he give you **some** money? (ALD) 难道他没给过你一些钱吗?(肯定给过)

Doesn't **someone** know the answer? (CGEL) 不是有人知道答案吗?(肯定有人知道)[比较 Does **someone** know the answer? 有人知道答案吗?(希望有人知道)]

Didn't **someone** call last night? (ib) 昨晚不是有人来访/来电话吗?(肯定有过)[比较 Did **someone** call last night? 昨晚是有人来访/来电话吗?(希望有过人来访/来电话)]

Hasn't the boat left **already**? (CGEL) (肯定船已开走了) 船不

是已经开走了吗? (改用 yet, 认为船该开走了, 但不如 already 肯定)

Didn't he recognize you **too**? (ib) 他不是把你也认出来了吗? (肯定是“认出来了”)(改用 either, 表示觉得很可能“认出来”, 不如 too 肯定)

Exercise 9

I. 填入 some 或 any 或 some, any 的复合词:

1. He may turn up at _____ moment.
2. He asked me if I had seen _____ there. (指人)
3. You may take _____ book you like.
4. He never writes without making _____ mistakes.
5. Why are there so many mistakes in _____ of your papers?
6. Have you ever heard _____ about him since that time?
7. If _____ calls, tell him I am busy.
8. I like flowers, but I haven't _____ now.
9. May I give you _____ more ham? (火腿)
10. Wasn't there _____ telephone in the house?

II. 用 much, many, a great deal, a great many, plenty of, a lot of 等回答下列问句:

1. Have you many friends here?
2. Did it give you much pleasure?
3. Did you spend much time in studying English?
4. Have many people been to see you?
5. Did they have to change trains many times?
6. Did she write you many letters?

III. 从括号中选择正确的答案:

1. Don't you have (some, any) ideas? I think you have.
2. Haven't you (ever, never) been to London?
3. John hardly invites (any, some) students to his parties.
4. No one ever gives her (any, some) encouragement.
5. I don't know (any, some) people who never send (some, any) Christmas cards.
6. Hardly (anyone, someone) wants the job.
7. Barely (any, some) weapons were accumulated before the war.
8. She avoided (ever, any) speaking to us.

IV. 用 already, yet, still, ever 填空:

1. Has she gone to bed _____? I feel surprised.
2. "Do you _____ go to concerts?" "Yes, sometimes."
3. I _____ don't understand what you mean.
4. His uncles weren't married even _____.

V. 选用适当代词填空 (any, anything, every, everything, it, little, many, same, that, they, them, their, those, what):

- "Had Jordan(美国球星乔丹) really been talking to _____
(1) two boys in _____ (2) grim neighborhood?"
"Not two, but four," Jordan said and named _____ (3).
"How do you remember _____ (4) names?" I asked.
"Because I see _____ (5) _____ (6)night."
"The _____ (7) 4 boys?"
"Yes," he explained: the year before he had seen _____
(8) waiting outside the Stadium in terrible weather, wanting a

glimpse of the Bulls (公牛队员) as _____ (9) arrived for a game.

“I said, don't wait out there, come inside,” Jordan said, “so I brought _____ (10) in for the game.”

_____ (11) live four blocks away from the Stadium, an area _____ (12) can be dismal and dangerous, and _____ (13) offers _____ (14) of its young residents _____ (15) hope, if _____ (16) hope at _____ (17).

“Now they wait for _____ (18) on that corner _____ (19) night,” he said.

“_____ (20) night, why, and _____ (21) do they talk about?” “_____ (22),” Jordan said, “_____ (23). I've asked to see _____ (24) grades so that I can check to see they are paying attention to _____ (25) schoolwork. If _____ (26) turns out that one or two of _____ (27) may need tutoring I make sure _____ (28) get _____ (29).”

第十章 替代词

10.1 one 作为替代词

替代词是替代上文提到过的某一词语的简短单词。除代词 one, that, some, the same 等外,还包括替代动词的 do, 替代非名词/动词成分的 so。下面首先讨论 one 的替代用法。

1) one 用来替代可数的单数名词(或名词短语);其复数形式为 ones, 用来替代可数的复数名词(或名词短语):

I want a photograph of you — would you give me **one**? (Wilde)
(= a photograph of you) 我想要你的一张照片——你给我一张好吗?

I like those pencils, I'll take a blue **one**. (Thomson) (= pencil)
我喜欢那些铅笔,我要一支蓝的。

The students in this class have to work harder than the **ones** in Mr. Lee's class. (= students) 这个班的学生必须比李先生班的学生更努力地学习。

“Have you any knives? I need a sharp **one** (= knife).” “I can get you several sharp ones (= knives), but this is the best (one).” (CGEL) “你有刀子吗? 我需要一把快的。” “我可以给你几把快刀,但这把是最好的。”

替代词 one/ones 表示所提到的同类事物中的一个/一些,其所指并非与被替代的名词所指为同一个/一些人或事物,而指示代词 it/they 等所指的是与上下文所提到的同一个/一些人或事物:

The teapot's broken, and we do need **one**. 茶壶打破了,我们确实

需要一个。(one = a teapot, 并非上文提到的那个茶壶)

He gave me a watch, but I lost **it**. (RHD) 他给了我一块手表,
可我把它丢了。(it 指上文提到的那块手表)

There was one long writing table and two small **ones**. (Walpole)
有一个长写字台和两个小写字台。(ones = writing tables)

Peel the potatoes and put **them** in the saucepan. (Need) 把土豆
的皮削了,并把它们放进(长柄)小锅里。

One/ones 只能替代可数名词,不能替代不可数名词;当前边提
过某个不可数名词时,下文可重复或省略那个名词或用其他代词代
替:

Don't get artificial silk — we must have **real silk**. (Swan) 不要
买人造丝,我们必须要有真丝。(不能说 * real one/ones)

If you haven't got fresh milk, I'll take some tinned (**milk**). (ib)
如果你没有鲜牛奶,我就要一些罐装牛奶。

It's cheaper to buy old furniture than to have new **furniture**
made. 买旧家具比做新家具便宜。

Gamblers are pursuing money, and most of them lose **it** instead.
(RHD) 赌博者想赢钱,可大多数却输钱。

2) 单数 one 之前可无定语,这时 one 替代一个带不定冠词 a/an
的名词:

There are some apples, you may take **one**. (RHD)(one = an ap-
ple) 有些苹果,你可以拿一个。

I haven't got any stamps. Could you give me **one**? (ALD)(one =
a stamp) 我没有邮票,你能给我一枚吗?

I confess that my error has been **one** of ambition and pure igno-
rance. 我承认我的错误是由于想入非非和全然无知。

单数 one 也可以带形容词、代词前位定语,或介词短语等后位
定语:

The question is a **complicated one**. (Dreiser) 这个问题是个复杂的问题。

My cheap camera takes better pictures than **his expensive one**. 我那架便宜相机拍的照片比他那架昂贵相机拍的照片还要好。

What naughty boys! Look at **the one high above in the tree**. 多淘气的男孩子呀! 看高处大树上那个。

Understanding the cultural habits of another nation, especially **the one containing as many different subcultures as the United States**, is a complex task. 理解另一个国家的文化习俗, 特别是像美国这样包含许多亚文化的国家, 是一项复杂的任务。

而复数 ones 总要带前位或后位定语, 以说明所指是一类中确定或不确定的那些:

These apples aren't ripe. Give me **some/the ripe ones**. (Swan)
这些苹果不熟。给我一些/那些熟的。(some ripe ones 指不确定的事物, the ripe ones 指确定的事物)

I wish I'd bought a few jars of honey. Did you notice **the ones they were selling by the roadside**. (CGEL) 我要是刚才买几罐蜜就好了。你注意到他们在路边卖的了没?

We are apt to find that the very men who block a scheme are **ones who clamour loudest**. 我们常会发现, 妨碍一项计划的人正是一些高调唱得最响亮的人。

3) one/ones 所带定语不能仅仅是名词所有格或物主代词等属性代词, 必须有形容词和它们一起连用:

Let's take your/Jack's **new one/ones**. (Swan) 让我们带上你的/杰克的那个/那些新的。(不能说 * your/Jack's one/ones)

"What kind of ice-cream would you like?" " **A big pink one.**" (ib)
“你想要什么样的冰淇淋?” “大个粉红的。”(不说 * a one)

定冠词 the 单独放在 one/ones 之前时, one/ones 要带后位定语, 以限定所指:

The one/ones in the corner is/are mine. (Swan) 角落里的那个/那些是我的。(不能说 * The one/ones is/are mine.)

This room and **the one upstairs** are well furnished. 这个房间和楼上的那个房间都陈设了很好的家具。

One/ones 之前不用 own, both 等修饰:

“Would you like the red one or the blue one?” “Both.” (Swan)

“你想要那个红的还是蓝的?” “都想要。”(不说 * both ones)

I can't write properly with your pen; I'd rather use my own. 我用你的钢笔写不顺手, 我要用自己的钢笔。(不说 * my own one)

基数词不能单用于 ones 前, 但“基数词 + 形容词”可以修饰 ones:

I caught **nine big ones**. (Swan) 我抓住了九个大个儿的。(不说 * nine ones)

4) one/ones 在以下情况可以省略:

i) one/ones 之前为“the + 形容词的比较级或最高级”时, one (s)可略:

I bought **the more expensive (one)** of the two. (Thomson) 我买了两个之中较贵的那一个。

I think my dog's **the fastest (one)**. (Swan) 我想我的狗是最快的一只。

ii) one/ones 之前为与上文形成对比的形容词时, one (s)可略:
I prefer *the large bottle* to **the small (one)**. 那大瓶和那小瓶比较, 我更喜欢大的。

There're only *hard chocolates*, we've eaten all **the soft (ones)**. (LDCE) 只有硬巧克力, 软巧克力我们都吃完了。

He was more accustomed to *sick people* than to **healthy (ones)**.

(RHD) 病人和健康人相比,他更惯于处身病人中间。

但形容词前是不定冠词时,one 一般不省略:

I prefer a large bottle to a **small one**. 我更想要一大瓶,而不是一小瓶。

iii) one/ones 之前为表颜色的形容词时,one (s)可省略:

“Which do you like?” “I like the **blue (one)**.” (Thomson) “你喜欢哪个?” “蓝色的。”

但颜色形容词前有指示代词时,one/ones 一般不省略:

I like **this blue one/these blue ones**. (Thomson) 我喜欢这个/这些蓝色的。

Do you want these crayons as well as **those red ones**? (RWRT) 除了那些红蜡笔,你还要这些吗?

iv) one/ones 之前为指示代词时,one (s)可省略:

Do you want this crayon as well as **that (one)**? (RWRT) 除了那支蜡笔,你还要这支吗?

Do you want these crayons as well as **those (ones)**? (ib) 除了那些蜡笔,你还要这些吗?

There was never a path on it until my father had made **this (one)**. 在我父亲开辟这条小路之前,那上面从没有路。

v) one/ones 之前为 which, (n) either, another, the last, the next, the other, 或为序数词时,one (s)可省略:

“Which **(one)** would you like?” “That **(one)**.” (Swan) “你要哪个?” “那个。”

Either (one) will suit me (ib). 这两个哪个都适合我。

Judy broke the coffee-pot, so she has to buy **another (one)**. 朱蒂打破了咖啡锅,她不得不再买一个。

You can take this book, I will keep **the other (one)**. (ib) 你可以

拿这本书,另外一本我保存。

“Have another chocolate.” “No, thanks, that was my **third (one)**.” (ib) “再吃一块巧克力吧。”“不,谢谢,我已经吃了三块了。”

10.2 that, those 作为替代词

that 替代不可数名词短语或单数可数名词,仅指事物,不能指人;those 替代复数可数名词(包括 and 连结的并列结构),既可指人,也可指事物:

The poison of the cobra is more deadly than **that** of the rattle snake. (RHD) (= the poison) 眼镜蛇之毒比响尾蛇之毒更要命。

Towards the end of his life, Schubert wrote two remarkable trios: **that** in B flat and **that** in D flat. (CGEL) (= the trio) 舒伯特在其生命的最后阶段写了两部著名的三重奏乐曲:降 B 调三重奏和降 D 调三重奏。

The blonde girls I saw were older than **those**/the ones you were dancing with. (CGEL) (= the girls) 我看到的那些金发姑娘比跟你跳舞的那些年龄要大。

His speech and behavior were **those** of a hooligan. (RHD) (= speech and behavior) 他的言行是流氓的言行。

the one 与 that 有共同之点,即都可替代指物的单数可数名词。不同点是后接 of 短语时不能用 the one,而要用 that;后接定语从句时,更常用 the one:

My seat was next to **that of the mayor**. (Eckersley) 我的座位就在市长的旁边。

It was a marvelous picture just like **the one (that) we had seen the**

other day. 这幅画跟我们几天前看到的那幅一样精彩。

I drew my chair nearer **the one on which Sophy was sitting**.

(RHD) 我把椅子拉得更靠近索菲坐的椅子。

the ones 与 those 有时是通用的,如:

The paintings of Gauguin's Tahiti period are more famous than **those/the ones** he painted in France. (CGEL) 高赓在塔希提时期画的画比他在法国画的画更有名。

但也像 the one 与 that 的分工一样,在后接 of 短语时不用 the ones, 而用 those:

The mountains of Switzerland are much higher than **those of Wales**. (Close) 瑞士的山比威尔士的山高得多。

Tom's essays are better than **those of the other boys**. (Alexander) 汤姆的文章比另外那些孩子的好。(也可说 the other boys', 但不说 * the other boys' ones 或 * the ones of the other boys)

此外,虽作复数形式而实际不可数的集合名词及以 and 连接的名词,都不可用 the ones 替代,而要用 those:

The *clothes* people wear today do not seem to last as long as **those** that people wore in the past. 现在人们穿的衣服似乎没有过去的衣服耐穿。

The *culture and customs* of America are more like **those** of England than of any other country. 美国的文化和习俗更像英国的,而不那么像其他国家的。

10.3 some, none 等作为替代词

不定代词 some, any, none (= “no + 名词”), many, much, enough, each, (n)either, both, all 等可以作为替代词,替代上文提

过的名词:

Can you give me a few nails/a little oil? I need **some**. (CGEL)

(= some nails/oil) 你能给我一些钉子/油吗? 我需要一些。

I looked everywhere for fresh fruit before I found **some**. (LDCE)

(= some fresh fruit) 我找遍了各处才找到一些鲜水果。

Some equipment has been damaged, but **none** has been lost.

(CGEL) (= no equipment) 一些设备损坏了,但没有一件丢失。

He never read a book, there were **none** for him to read. (Wells)

(= no books) 那时他从未读过书,没有一本书可供他读。

I'd like some more colored paper, if you have **any**. (CGEL) (=

any more colored paper) 如果你有,我想再要一些彩纸。

A lot of guests were expected, but **few** came. (Alexander) (=

few guests) 本来预计会有很多客人,可实际上却没有来几个。

John and I went looking for mushrooms. He found **a few** (= a

few mushrooms), I found **several** (= several mushrooms),

and we soon had enough (= enough mushrooms). (CGEL) 我

和约翰去采蘑菇。他找到一些,我找到些个,一会儿我们就采够了。

“Have you any bread?” “Yes, **a little/plenty**.” (LLCE) (= a

little/plenty bread) “你有面包吗?”“有点儿/很多。”

Take more apples. I don't want **many** for myself. (LLCE) (=

many apples) 再拿点儿苹果,我自己要不了很多。

A few people were killed in the fire, but **most** were saved. (ib)

(= most people) 一些人在大火中死去了,但大多数都得救了。

He already owns half the land; now he wants even **more**. (ib)

(= more land) 他已经拥有了那片土地的一半儿; 现在他还想多要。

This year we produced more coal, but we sold **less** (= less coal)/ but we didn't sell so **much** (= so much coals). (CGEL) 今年我们生产的煤虽较多, 卖得却较少。

He didn't like the red skirt, so I asked to see **another**. (Alexander) (= another skirt/one) 他不喜欢那件红裙子, 所以我又让拿了另外一件。

Two boys entered, **each** carrying a suitcase. (Thomson) (= each boy) 两个男孩儿进来。每人提着一个手提箱。

His sons go to the same school as he did; and **all/both** want to become doctors. (CGEL) (= all/both his sons) 他的儿子们上了他曾上过的学校, 并且都想当医生。

There're two roads into town, and you can take **either**. (RHD) (= either road) 进城有两条路, 你走哪条都行。

I made two suggestions and **neither** was accepted. (RHD) (= neither suggestion) 我提了两个建议, 哪个都没被接受。

对于 either, neither 和 both, 它们可以替代相应的并列名词短语 (...or/nor/and...):

Proust and James are great novelists, but I like Tolstoy better than **either**. (CGEL) (= either Proust or James) 普鲁斯特和詹姆斯是伟大的小说家, 但与他们相比, 我更喜欢托尔斯泰。

Proust and James are great novelists, but **neither** is easy to read. (ib) (= neither Proust nor James) 普鲁斯特和詹姆斯是伟大的小说家, 但两人的作品都难读。

She and her husband went to see the house. **Both** felt it suitable. (= both she and her husband) 她和她丈夫去看那座房子, 两人都感觉很合适。

上述这几个代词的用法也可以理解为省略用法,如: When the children entered, **each** was given a small present. 当孩子们进来时, 每一个都得到一件小礼物。each 可以理解为“each child”的替代形式, 也可以理解为“each of the children”的省略形式。

10.4 the same 作为替代词

1) the same 可以替代名词短语, 表示与上文所提到的是同类的另一(些)事物(而非同一事物):

“Can I have a cup of black coffee with sugar, please?” “Give me **the same.**” (CGEL) (= Give me one, too) “请给我一杯加糖黑咖啡。”“我也要同样的。”

“I’ll have a coffee.” “(**The Same** for me, please.” (ALD) (= I’ll have one, too.) “我要喝杯咖啡。”“我也喝杯。”

the same 还可带后置修饰语:

“I’d like a cup of tea.” “I’d like **the same** with milk but without sugar.” “我要喝杯茶。”“我也要杯茶, 加牛奶但不加糖的。”

the same 有时替代名词从句所表情况(尤其 say 之后), 替代作表语的形容词及介词短语等:

“(I say) Oxford is likely to win the next boat race.” “I say **the same.**” (CGEL) (= I say that Oxford is likely to win the next race, too.) “(我说)牛津可能赢得下次划船比赛。”“我也这么认为。”

The soup is delicious, and the turkey smells **the same.** (= The turkeys smells delicious, too.) (ib) 汤很好喝, 火鸡闻起来也很味美。

Yesterday I felt under the weather, and today I feel **the same.** (= I feel under the weather, too) 昨天我觉得不舒服, 今天

觉得还是不好受。

the same 还可替代上文的某个过程：

“I lost my way in the galleries.” “**The same** happened to me.” “我在画廊里迷了路。” “我也有过这种情况。”

2) the same 作替代词常暗示两件不同事物之间的比较即“…也是这样(实指类似)”。因此像下面这样的句子中的 do so(参见 10.6)不能换成 do the same:

Tom phoned for the doctor, but didn't tell his mother he had **done so**. (CGEL) 汤姆给医生打了电话,但没有告诉他妈妈打过电话了。(do so 在这里表同一件事)

下面的句子中的 do so 和 do the same 可通用:

Tom phoned for the doctor, but didn't realize that his mother had just **done so/the same**. (ib) 汤姆打电话叫医生,但不知道他妈妈刚才也打过。(do so 在此表同类的事而不表同一件事)

I'll contribute ten dollars, if you'll do **the same/do so**, too. (ib) 我捐 10 块钱,如果你也这样做的话。

the same 也有时并无比较的含义:

Lair-Right is the right of the Mother. From all of her year, she may claim one haunch of each kill for her litter, and none may deny her **the same**. (RWRT) 筑窠生崽是母兽的权利,她可向所有与她同龄者要每只猎物的一块后胯,给她的幼仔,谁也不准不给。

the same 在较旧的用法中,尤其是在法律或官场用语中,可指所提到的同一个(种)人或事物:

I invited Dr. Jones to see me, and was visited by **the same** (= him) at 3 p.m.. (CGEL) 我邀请了琼斯博士来看我,他下午 3 点就来了。

I recovered the weapon and delivered (**the**) **same** to the sergeant.

(ib) 我找回了那件武器,并把该武器给了中士。

10.5 do 作为替代词

do 作为替代词,可替代所提到的动词或“动词+补足成分”。它与其他实意动词一样,有人称、数和时态的变化:

I prophesied he would fail, and he **did**. (Wood) (= failed; 替代一个动词) 我预言他要失败了,结果他真失败了。

The nuclear bomb doesn't change our lives, but the computer **does**. (RHD) (= changes our lives; 替代“动—宾”结构) 核弹没有改变我们的生活,可电脑却改变了我们的生活。

He was always meaning to buy some, but never **did**. (Priestley) (= bought any; 替代非限定结构中的“动—宾”结构) 他总是打算买一些,却从来没有买。

“May I come round in the morning?” “Yes, please **do**.” (Walpole) (= come round in the morning; 替代“动—状”结构) “我可以上午过来吗?”“好吧。”

“The grass looks nice.” “The flowers **do** too.” (Swan) (= look nice; 替代“系—表”结构) “草看着多鲜美!”“花看上去也是啊!”

“Does Granny look after you every day?” “She can't **do** at weekends, because she has to go to her own house.” (= look after me; 替代上文谓语的一部分,不包括 every day,并且 you 变成了 me) “奶奶每天照看你吗?”“周末她不能照看,她得回自己家。”

替代词 do 后有时带宾语:

She asked me to make some coffee, **which I did**. (CGEL) 她让我煮些咖啡,我煮了。

She plays the piano better than she **does the guitar**. 她钢琴比吉
他弹得好。

Mary studies modern history and doesn't **do modern language**.

(ib) 玛丽研究现代历史,不研究现代语言。

Even the electric lamp produces much more heat than it **does
light**. 甚至电灯产生的热能也比产生的光能多。

英国英语中,替代词 do 可用在助动词/半助动词/情态动词后,
而美国英语中,do 一般省略:

“Do you go swimming before breakfast?” “I used to (**do**), but
not any longer.” (RWRT) “早饭前你去游泳吗?”“我过去常
去游泳,但现在不了。”

“Do you pass the library on the way home?” “I could (**do**)”
(RWRT) “你回家时路过图书馆吗?”“可以路过。”

The Americans are reducing their defense expenditure this year. I
wonder if the Russians will (**do**), too. (CGEL) 今年美国要
减少国防开支,我不知道俄罗斯会不会也这样做。

“Why don't you sit quietly?” “I am (**doing**).” (ib) “为什么你不
安安静静地坐一会儿?”“我正安安静静地坐着呢!”

I didn't touch the television set, but Percy might have (**done**).
(ib) 我没有动电视,伯西可能动了。

Bob says going to join the Labour Party. It will be interesting to
see whether he does (**do**). (CGEL) (替代词 do 放在助动词
do 后不常用) 鲍伯说他要加入工党。看他是否真那么做,那
将是很有意思的。

替代词 do 一般不用在动词非限定形式及其短语中:

“Peter hunts rabbits.” “Yes, he wanted me **to hunt rabbits**, too.
(CGEL) (不说 * Yes, he wanted me **to do**, too.) “彼得常打
兔子。” “是的,他也想让我去打兔子。”

替代词 do 一般不替代 have(有)和 be:

I am not as clever as he **is**. (Thomson) (不说 * I am not as clever as he **does**.) 我不如他聪明。

You **are** always agreeable to a “compromise” when you think that **being** so is in your interest. (RWRT) (不说 * ... **doing** so is in your interest.) 当你认为同意“妥协”对你有好处,你总会同意“妥协”的。

Your mother **has** no right, not any more than I **have**, to tell you how to run your life. (RWRT) 你母亲和我一样都无权命令你如何安排你的生活。(一般不说 * Your mother has no right, not any more than I **do** ...)

替代词 do 要和所替代的动词短语在语态上保持一致:

If overheads **are excluded** from the balance sheet, as can **be done** under the new bookkeeping system, the company actually shows a slight profit. (RWRT) 不说 * If overheads are excluded from the balance sheet, as you can **do** ...) 如果从资产负债表中扣除营业费(在新会计体制下可以这样做),这家公司实际略有赢利。

替代词 do 只能替代动词:

He neglected the child as only a madman could **do**. (RWRT) 他忽视孩子,就像疯子对孩子不管不问一样。(不说 * Such callous **neglect** of a child is something that only a madman could do, 但可以说 ... could allow)

10.6 do so, do it, do that

1) do so 替代动词短语,常常用来表示同一主语的另一动作,有时可和替代词 do 交换使用。do so 中的 so 总是不重读,而 do 一般

重读:

“Has she finished it?” “She might have (**done so**), but I’m not sure.” (RWRT) “她已经完成了吗?” “她可能已经完成了,但我不敢肯定。”

The American team will have to think of some new tactics, and are probably **doing so** at this very minute. (ib) (= thinking of some new tactics) 美国队得想某种新战术,也许此时此刻他们就在想呢!

“Have you written that letter?” “I will **do so** immediately. (Swan) (= write that letter) “你写了那封信了吗?” “我马上写。”

类似替代词 do, do so 偶尔用在助动词 do 之后,以下几种说法都是对的:

They planned to reach the top of the mountain, but nobody knows if they **did/did so/did do so**. (CGEL) 他们计划到达山顶,但没有人知道他们是否真的到了山顶。

do so 的变化形式 doing so 和 to do so 可分别倒装为 so doing 和 so to do:

Robert was rounding up the cattle. When asked why he was so **doing/doing so**, he replied: “Orders are orders.” (CGEL) 罗伯特正在圈牛。当有人问他为什么这么做时,他说:“命令就是命令。”

He abolished the schools. And in **so doing/doing so** he put our country back two hundred years. 他废除了学校。这种做法使我们国家后退了二百年。

To do so/so to do is to betray the confidence of their readers. (CGEL) 这样做就是背弃他们的读者的信任。

2) do it 和 do that 是及物替代词 do 与人称代词和指示代词的

组合,与 do so 比,更强调上文提过的具体动作或事件,三者有时通用:

“Rover is scratching the door.” “Yes, he always **does so/does it/does that** when he wants attention.” (CGEL) (= scratches the door.) “罗欧(狗或猫等之名)正在抓门。”“是的,当它想引起人们的注意时,它总那么做。”

“John abandoned his car during the snowstorm.” “I don’t know he **did so/did it/did that.**” (= abandoned his car during the snowstorm) “约翰在暴风雪中放弃了汽车。”“我不知道他这么做了。”

Mr. Brown goes to the hospital for treatment every week: in fact, he has been **doing so/doing it/doing that** ever since I have known him. (CGEL) (= going to the hospital for treatment every week) 布朗先生每周去医院接受治疗:事实上,自从我认识他起,他就一直那么做。

do this 也有时用来替代动词短语 (this 比 that 语气强些):

For example, a detective on a stolen car case may have to check through long lists of information, and in the time it takes him to **do this** the thief may well escape. 例如,调查一起盗车案件的侦探要查阅大量资料,在他花时间做这事时,那盗贼很可能就逃跑了。

You live under tons of air. To understand how you can **do this**, you need to understand the nature of this ocean of air. 你生活在成吨的空气之下。要明白你怎么能在这种情况下生活,你需要明白这一大气海洋的性质。

3) do, do so, do it/do that 的差异:

i) do so, do it/do that 表示动作、行为,多替代动态动词(如以上各例中),而单用的替代词 do 除了替代动态动词,还可替代 like,

think, remember, feel 等状态动词, 但 be 和表示“有”的 have 除外:

I like the saxophone, and I always have (**done**). (Swan) (不说 *... does so) 我喜欢萨克斯管, 我一直都很喜欢。

“She lost her money.” “I wasn’t surprised that she **did**. (ib) “她失去了记忆。” “我对此并不感到吃惊。”

“Jane feels much better.” “I don’t know she **does**. “简感觉好多了。” “我还不知道呢!”

替代不及物动词的 do 不可取动词非限定形式, 而 do so, do it/do that 却可以。因此下面各句中的 do so/do it/do that 不能换成 do:

As no one else has succeeded in solving the mystery, I shall attempt to (**do so**) myself. (CGEL) 由于没有其他人解开这个谜, 我要自己来试着把它解开。

As no one else has succeeded in **doing so**, I shall attempt to solve the mystery myself. (ib) (译文同上)

“I rode a camel in Morocco.” “I’d love to **do that**.” (Swan) “我在摩洛哥骑过骆驼。” “我也想去骑骑骆驼。”

ii) do 比 do so 更口语化, 所以简短回答中常用 do:

“Did you go to the movies?” “Yes, I **did**.” (RHD) “你去看电影了吗?” “去了。”

“Do you smoke?” “Yes, I **do**.” (Thomson) “你吸烟吗?” “吸烟。”

“Do you want to go with me?” “I sure **do**.” “你想和我一起去吗?” “当然想。”

iii) do it 和 do that 可有细微差别: do it 强调所做的是特定的一个动作, 一件事; do that 可表示所做的是一般行为, 那种事; 而 do so 强调所做的是一般行为, 那样的事:

Is Connie still trying to light the stove? She should have **done it** by now. (CGEL) (强调生炉子这一动作) 康妮还在生炉子

吗？到现在她该生着了。

Are you trying to light the stove with a match? I wouldn't **do that**. (ib)(强调对用火柴生炉子这件事的惊奇)你想要用火柴生炉子吗？我不会做那样的事。

Martin is painting his house. I'm told he **does it** every four years. (CGEL) (前后两个场合一个动作；does that 也可以)马丁正在油刷房子。我听说他每四年就刷一次。

Martin is painting his house. I'm told this is merely because his neighbour **did so** last year. (同一种一般性动作：油漆房屋；do so 比 do it/that 更强调其为类属关系) 马丁正在油房子，有人告诉我，他这么做只是因为去年他的邻居这样做过。

iv) 被动句中，通常不用 do so，而较常用 do that/it:

How can free electrons be made to move along a wire? Well, men have found several ways to **do that**. 怎么才能使自由电子沿导线移动呢？唔，人们已找到了几种办法。

Has the water been turned off? Who **did it** without asking me? 水关掉了吗？谁没问我就把水给关了？

10.7 so 替代上文中的表语或定语

so 可替代上文作表语、定语的形容词(或其短语)、名词(或其短语):

Prices at present are reasonably stable, and will probably remain **so**. (CGEL) (so = stable) 物价目前相当稳定，并且可能维持下去。

“Is he rich?” “Yes, (he is) immensely **so**.” (RHD) (so = rich)
“他富吗？”“是的，极富。”

“(He's) A rich man, isn't he?” “Yes, truly **so**.” “他富吗？”“确

实这样。”(so = rich; 替代定语)

Brett's work is not yet consistent in style and quality, but will no doubt become **so**. 布赖特的作品在风格和质量上还不一致,但将来肯定会一致的。

If he is a criminal, it's his parents who have made him **so**. (ib)
若他是罪犯,是他父母使其成为这样的。(so = a criminal)

so 一般不紧跟在 be 后:

The plants are healthy enough now, but I wonder how long they will remain **so**. (CGEL)(也可说 ... they will **be**.) 这些植物现在很健康,但我不知道他们这种状态会保持多久。

非正式场合中,so 有时可用 like that, that way 替换:

Prices at present are reasonably stable, and will probably stay **so/that way**. (ib)

so 之前可用 more, less, too much, so much 等副词修饰:

Of all the careless people no one is **more so** than Bill. (LDCE) (so 代替上文定语 careless) 粗心人之中,没有比比尔更粗心的了。

Although the poor girl was exhausted, she was **less so** than we feared. (CGEL) 虽然那个可怜的姑娘没有力气了,但还没有像我们担心的那样精疲力竭。

He is clever — probably too much **so** for his own good. (LDCE)
他很聪明——可能为自己的利益过于聪明了。

The weather was hot in Cario — **so much so**, that we stayed indoors all day. (CGEL) 开罗天气很热,热得我们整天都待在屋里。

so 还可放在有上文句子的句首:

We hoped that the programme would be a success, and **so** it turned out. (CGEL) (so = a success) 我们希望这个节目成功,结果真的成功了。

10.8 “so + do(或助动词/情态动词) + 主语”与“so + 主语 + do(或助动词/情态动词)”

1) so(副词)与替代词 do 结合形成“so + do + 主语”结构。该结构表示某人/事物与前述人/事物的比较,意为“…也是如此”。使用这一结构时,上文为肯定句:

You asked him to leave, and **so did I.** (CEGL) (= I asked him to leave too.) 你让他离开,我也说让他离开。

“I like whisky.” “**So do I.**” (Swan) (= I like whisky too.) “我喜欢威士忌。”“我也喜欢。”

Factories multiplied, **so too did coal mines.** (RHD) (= Coal mines multiplied too.) 工厂增加了,煤矿也增加了。

Health improves, **so do spirits.** (ib) 身体好了,精神也振奋了。

My age, sex, and salary needs work against me. **So, of course, does the shortage of jobs.** 我的年龄、性别和工资需求不利于我找工作。当然,工作岗位短缺也是不利因素。

如果上文用了助动词、情态动词或联系动词,则上述结构就变成“so + 助动词/情态动词/联系动词 + 主语”:

“I’d made up my mind.” “**So had I.**” (Greene) “我已经下定了决心。”“我也是。”

If he’s going, then **so am I.** (RHD) 如果他要去,我也要去。

John can speak French and **so can I.** (Alexander) 约翰能说法语,我也能说。

I was tired, and **so were the others.** (Swan) 我累了,别人也都累了。

与“so + do(或助动词/情态动词) + 主语”对应的否定结构是“neither/nor + do(或助动词/情态动词) + 主语”(见 8.4)。

2) 副词 so 与替代词 do 结合的另一形式为“so + 主语 + do”结构。该结构表示对上文(肯定句)所述情况的肯定,可带有感情色彩。so 的含义相当于 indeed, certainly:

“You forgot your umbrella when you went out.” “Good heavens, **so I did.**” (Swan) “你出去时忘了带伞了。” “天啊,我真的忘了。”(表示惊异)

“They won the championship five years ago.” “**So they did.**” (ALD) “五年前,他们得了冠军。” “是啊,他们的确得了冠军。”(赞许)

与此类似,如果上文有助动词、情态动词或联系动词,这一结构就变成“so + 主语 + 助动词/情态动词/联系动词”:

“It is raining.” “**So it is.**” (Swan) “正下雨呢。” “可不是吗。”

I said I would come and **so I will.** (RHD) 我说要来,就肯定会来。(表态度坚决)

“He is a hero.” “**So he is.** I admire him.” “他是个英雄。” “不错,我敬仰他。”

在“so + 主语 + do(或助动词/情态动词/联系动词)”结构中,so 为信息中心,“so + do(或助动词/情态动词/联系动词) + 主语”结构中,主语为信息中心。比较:

I told Bob to eat up his dinner, and **so he did.** (CGEL)(比说 and he did so 语气强) 我让鲍勃把饭吃光,他确实那么做了。

Tom ate up his dinner, and **so did Bob.** 汤姆把饭吃光了,鲍勃把饭也吃光了。

上文为“there be”结构时,“there”作为形式主语放于 so 与 be 之间:

“There is a bird nesting in the garage.” “**So there is.**” (ALD) “有一只鸟在汽车棚里搭了个窝。” “可不是吗!”

“so + 主语 + do(或助动词/情态动词/联系动词)”结构没有相应

的否定结构,如:可说 So I do/am,但不说 * Neither I do/am.

10.9 so 和 not 替代上述从句

1) so 和 not 常和表看法或假设的动词连用,替代上文 that 从句,这些动词主要包括 appear, believe, expect, fancy, fear, gather, guess, hope, imagine, presume, reckon, seem, suppose, suspect, think, trust 等:

Many people believe that the international situation will deteriorate. My father thinks **so**, but I believe **not**. (CGEL) (My father thinks that the international situation will deteriorate, but I don't believe that the international situation will deteriorate.) 很多人认为国际局势会恶化。我父亲这么想,但我不这么想。

“Will it rain tomorrow?” “I hope **not**”. (RHD) (I hope that it will not rain) “明天要下雨吗?” “我希望别下。”

“Is there going to be a holiday tomorrow?” “I believe **so**.” (Close) (I believe that there's going to be a holiday/one.) “明天是放假吗?” “我想是的。”

如果 so 或 not 与 appear 或 seem 连用时,句首要使用代词 it(代表上述情况):

“Is it true that Geoff has had a heart attack?” “It seems **so**.” (Alexander) “杰奥夫犯过心脏病,真的吗?” “好像犯过。”

“Has Ann got into university?” “It seems **not**.” (ib) “安上了大学吗?” “似乎没有。”

so 与 not 还可和连词 if 搭配使用:

If it clears, we'll go out; if **not** (= if it doesn't clear), not. (RHD) 天晴我们就出去;天不晴就不出去。

He may be busy. If **so** (= if he is busy), I'll call later. If **not** (= if he is not busy), can I see him now? (Alexander) 他可能很忙。如果这样,我以后再来看。如果不忙,我现在可以见他吗?

so 与 **not** 也和形容词 **afraid** 一起使用, **so** 一般不重读,而 **not** 一般重读:

“Has the news reached home yet?” “I'm afraid **so/not**.” (CGEL)

“这一消息到家里了吗?” “恐怕到了/没到。”

2) **so** 还常和 **say**, **tell** 等动词连用,而 **not** 通常不用于这些词之后(除非主语是些指“人们”的 **they**, **people** 等):

Martin wants to write, but he's afraid to say **so**. (London) 马丁想写作,但他不敢说出这种想法来。

You're going to be the next president. Everybody says **so**. (Swan) 你将成为下届总统,人人都这样说。

Jack hasn't found a job yet. He told me **so** yesterday. (CGEL) 杰克还没找到工作。他昨天告诉我的。

“Are the Yankees a very strong team?” “No, they say **not**.” “美国队是很强的队吗?” “他们说不是。”

3) **so** 与 **not** 在和上述动词连用时,所表达的语气通常不十分肯定,也不十分否定。在表示明显的肯定或怀疑口气时,通常不用 **so** 或 **not**:

I asked when she was leaving, and she said she didn't know. (不说 * ... know **so**, 美国英语可说 ... know it) 我问她什么时候走,她说她不知道。

“There's going to be a holiday tomorrow.” “I know/I know that (already).” (“know that” 表示听者认为所被告知的并非新信息) “明天放假。” “我已经知道了。”

“Are the girls coming to the party?” “I'm sure they are/I'm sure

of it/I doubt if they are.”(不说 * I'm sure so/not,也不说 * I doubt so/not)“这些姑娘要来参加聚会吗?”“我肯定她们要来/我敢肯定/我怀疑她们是否会来。”

但 not 却常和肯定的副词 surely, certainly 等连用(so 一般不这样用):

“Does she really know him?” “Surely **not**.” (Surely she doesn't know him.) “她真的认识他吗?” “确实不认识。”

“Will you waste your time and money on that?” “Certainly **not**.”

“你要在那上面浪费时间和金钱吗?” “当然不。”

此外, not(而不是 so)还常和不十分肯定的副词如 perhaps, possibly, probably 等连用:

“Is your brother going with you?” “Perhaps **not**.” “你哥哥和你一起去吗?” “可能不会。”

4) 在动词 say, believe 等动词后,用 so 与用 it/that 有时存在着意义差别:

so 指一种意见或认识; it/that 指具体言谈。例如:

(A: Come in! 请进!)

B: Who says **so**? 谁同意的? (so 指所说的一种意见或认识)

比较:

B: Who said **that**? 谁说的“Come in”? (that 指具体言谈)

“Jane's crazy.” “Who says **so**?” “Dr. Bannister.” (Swan) “简神经失常了。”“谁说的?” “巴尼斯特医生。”(so 表示意见的权威性,说话者侧重这种认识的可信性)

比较:

“Jane's crazy.” “Who said **that**?” “I did.” (ib) “简神经失常了。”“这话是谁说的?” “我说的。”(说话者只想知道这话是谁说的; that 指具体言谈)

I can't believe **it/that**. (CGEL) 我不能相信那些话。(指一则新

闻的具体说法) 比较: I really believe **so**. (ib) (坚持一种意见)

5) 两种否定结构:

带否定转移的动词可有下面两种结构:

I don't think (suppose/believe/expect/imagine, etc.) **so**. = I think (suppose/believe/expect/imagine, etc.) **not**.

不带否定转移的动词, 如 hope, fancy, fear, gather, guess, trust 等, 不能用“not ... so”形式。例如, 可以说 I hope not. 不能说 * I don't hope so.

6) so 与 say, hear, understand, tell, believe, appear, seem 等动词连用时, 可用在主语之前, 主谓倒装与否均可(但主语为人称代词时, 一般不可主谓倒装):

“Oxford will win the boat race; at least, **so** all my Oxford friends say.” “And so say most of the sports writers, too. /**So** most of the sports writers say, too.” (CGEL) “牛津会赢得这场划船比赛; 至少我在牛津的朋友都这么说。” “大多数体育评论家们也这么说。”

“He's got the job?” “**So** she said.” (ALD) “他得到那个工作了吗?” “她说得到了。”

A: The stock market share-index has risen sharply. (Alexander)
股票市场的股份指数猛涨。

B: **So** I believe/gather/hear/notice/see/understand. (ib) 我相信/推测/听说/注意到/看到/明白是这样。

So you said. /**So** he told me. /**So** it seems. /**So** it appears. (ib) 你这么说/他这么告诉我/似乎那样/看上去是那样。

So I should/would hope! (ib) 我希望如此!

“There's going to be a holiday tomorrow.” “**So** I hear/I've heard/I heard.” (Close) “明天放假。” “我听别人这么说了。”

so 与 think, guess, hope, suppose 等连用时, 一般不放在主语之

前,如一般不说 * So I think. 在 so 与形容词 afraid 连用时,尤其不能把 so 放在主语之前:不说 * So I'm afraid. 要说 I'm afraid so. (LDCE)

7) not 还常和 why 连用而替代 why 疑问句。例如:

“You should not smoke.” “**Why not?** (RHD) (Why shouldn't I smoke?)” “你不应该吸烟。” “为什么不该呢?”

“Let's eat out tonight.” “Yes, **why not?**” (Alexander) (响应建议: Why don't we eat out tonight?) “今晚我们到外面吃饭吧!” “好啊,可不是该去了吗?”

Exercise 10

I. 说明下列句中 **one/ones, that/those** 替代什么词或指称什么:

1. The apples you have bought are larger than **those** on the tree.
2. I found that I was crossing the bridge over the Regent's Park Canal, which runs parallel with **that** in the Zoological Gardens.
3. It was a difficult translation, the **one** you gave us at the last lesson.
4. When **one** is in the right, **one** should not hesitate to say so.
5. He leaned over the table and smelt the violets: they were fresh-picked and very fine **ones**.

II. 改正下列句子中的错误:

1. The schoolboys I saw skating were much younger than that you were playing with.
2. No bread eaten by man is so sweet as those earned by his own labor.

3. No one, at any rate no English writer, has written better about the childhood life than does Dickens.
4. As inevitably as human culture has changed with the passing of time, so does the environment.
5. "Everything in the store is expensive." "So is it."

Ⅲ. 指出下列句中黑体部分词语所指代的内容:

1. Write me, and let me know how things are, and I'll **do the same**.
2. I know they enjoyed every minute of it. Don't you think **so**?
3. "Shakespeare was born in 1564, wasn't he?" "I believe **so**."
4. He was trying to follow her example but could not **do so**.

Ⅳ. 选择最佳答案:

1. Understanding the cultural habits of another nation, especially _____ containing as many different subcultures as the United States, is a complex task.
A. one B. the one C. that D. such
2. Even if they are on sale, these refrigerators are equal in price to _____, if not more expensive than, at the other store.
A. anyone B. the others C. that D. the ones
3. As fuel prices rose, bus companies raised their fares and _____.
A. so did the airlines B. nor did the airlines
C. so the airlines did D. nor the airline did
4. Yet these old controversies give no less revealing an insight (同样发人深省的洞察) into the minds of our grandfathers _____ the major issues(问题)of the last century.

A. than are

B. than do

C. as are

D. as do

5. These won't do. Show me some better _____.

A. ones

B. those

C. one

D. it

6. The clothes he wears are the same as _____ his father wears.

A. those

B. the one

C. ones

D. that

例句出处略语表 (主要参考书目)

ALD: *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*, Oxford University Press, 1980/1989/1995

Alexander, L.G., *Longman English Grammar*, Longman Group Limited, New York, 1988

Boliner, D., *The Phrasal Verb in English*, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1971

Brewer, *Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable* (Revised Edition), Cassell Ltd., London, 1981

Carver, D.J., *Collins English Learner's Dictionary*, Collins, London, 1974

CDE: *The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English*, John Benjamins Publishing Company, Philadelphia, 1986

CGE: **G. Leech et al**, *A Communicative Grammar of English*, Longman, London, 1975

CGEL: **R. Quirk et al**, *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, Longman, London, 1985

Chambers: *Chambers Universal Learner's Dictionary*, W & R Chambers Ltd., Edinburgh, 1980

Close, R.A., *A Reference Grammar for Students of English*, Longman, London, 1975

COD: *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Current English*, Ox-

ford University Press, 1976/1982

Collins: *Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary*, Collins Birmingham University International Language Database, Klett, 1987

DAI: **M. T. Boatner**, *A Dictionary of American Idioms*, Barron's Educational Series Inc., New York, 1975

DCIE: *Oxford Dictionary of Current Idiomatic English*, Oxford University Press, 1975/1983

DPWE: **H. Shaw**, *Dictionary of Problem Words and Expressions*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1975

Eckersley, C. E. et al, *A Comprehensive English Grammar*, Longman, London, 1961

EGS: **L. G. Alexander et al**, *English Grammatical Structure*, Longman, London, 1977

Evans, B., *A Dictionary of American Usage*, Random House, New York, 1975

Fowler, W. H., *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1965

FWF: *Editors of the Reader's Digest, Family Word Finder*, The Reader's Digest Association Ltd., New York, 1978

GCE: **R. Quick et al**, *A Grammar of Contemporary English*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1973

GSL: **M. West**, *A General Service List of English Words*, Longman, London, 1977.

Halsey, W. D., *Macmillan Contemporary Dictionary*, Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc., London, 1979

Hayakawa, S. I., *Cassell's Modern Guide to Synonyms and Related Words*, Cassell Ltd., London, 1979

Hill, L. A., *Prepositions and Adverbial Particles*, Oxford Uni-

versity Press, 1968

Hornby, A.S., *Guide to Patterns and Usage in English*, Oxford University Press, 1975

IEU: T. Todd & I. Hancock, *International English Usage*, Croom Helm Ltd., Kent, 1986

Jespersen, O., *A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles*, Munksgaard, Copenhagen, 1909 – 1949

LDCE: Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Longman Group Limited, London, 1978/1995

LDEI: Longman Dictionary of English Idioms, Longman Group Limited, 1979

LDPV: Longman Dictionary of Phrasal verbs, Longman Group Limited, 1983

Leech, G., *Meaning and the English Verb*, Longman, London, 1971

LLAV: Longman Language Activator, the World's First Production Dictionary, 1993; 1997 年上海外语教育出版社版英文本书名汉译《朗文英语联想活用词典》(世界上第一部联想生成表达词典)

LLCE: Longman Lexicon of Contemporary English, Longman Group Limited, 1981

NDEC: Kenkyusha's New Dictionary of English Collocations, Kenkyusha Ltd., Tokyo, 1958

NODE: The New Oxford Dictionary Of English, Oxford University Press, 1998/2001

ODEP: The Oxford Dictionary of English Proverbs, Oxford University Press, 1982

ODPD: The Oxford-Duden Pictorial English-Japanese Dictionary, Oxford University Press, 1983

OED: *The Oxford English Dictionary (& Supplements)*, Oxford University Press, 1928~1976

Onions, C. T., *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*, Oxford University Press, 1982

Palmer, F. R., *The English Verb*, Longman, London, 1974

Palmer, H. E., *A Grammar of English Words*, Longman, London, 1964

Partridge, E., *Usage and Abusage: A Guide to Good English*, Penguin, Harmondsworth, 1973

POD: *The Pocket Oxford Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1969

RHD: *The Random House Dictionary of the English Language*, Oxford University Press, 1973/1987

RWRT: **J. E. Kahn et al**, *The Right Word at the Right Time*, The Reader's Digest Association Limited, London, 1985

Schibsbye, K., *A Modern English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1979

Seidl, J. et al, *English Idioms*, Oxford University Press, 1988

SOD: *The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1973

Swan, M., *Practical English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1980

Thomson, A. J. et al, *A Practical English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1987

Tracey, R. D., *Correcting Common Errors in English*, Times Educational Co. Ltd., London, 1980

UCEG: **A. Downing et al**, *A University Course of English Grammar*, Prentice Hall International Ltd., London, 1992

UGE:R. Quirk et al, *A University Grammar of English*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1974

URW:Editors of the Reader's Digest, *Use the Right Word*, Funk & Wagnalls, New York, 1971

Watson, O., *Longman Modern English Dictionary*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1976

WBD: The World Book Dictionary, Doubleday & Company, Inc., Chicago, 1981

WDS: Webster's Dictionary of Synonyms, Merriam-Webster Inc., Springfield U. S. A., 1951

Web. 3: Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc., Springfield, 1981

WNDS: Webster's New Dictionary of Synonyms, Merriam-Webster Inc., Springfield, 1978

WNNCD: Webster's 9th New Collegiate Dictionary, Merriam-Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1983

WTNCD: Webster's 10th New Collegiate Dictionary, Merriam-Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1995

WNWD: Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, Simon and Schuster, Inc., New York, 1972/1994

Wood, F. T., *Prepositional Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1979; *Current English Usage*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1981; *English Verbal Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1964

Wyld, H. C., *The Universal Dictionary of the English Language*, Routledge & Kegan Paul Limited, London, 1960

Young, D., *The Structure of English Clauses*, Hutchinson, London, 1980

Zandvoort, R. W., *A Handbook, of English Grammar*, Long-

man, London, 1948

汉英: 北京外国语大学《汉英词典》，外研社，北京，1995；
吴景荣、程镇球：《新时代汉英大词典》，商务印书馆，北京，2001

井上: 日本 井上义昌等《英米语用法辞典》，开拓社，东京，
1960

小西: 日本 小西友七等《英语前置词活用辞典》，大修馆书店，
东京，1974；《英语基本动词辞典》，Kenkyusha, Tokyo, 1980

岩波: 日本 中岛文雄等《岩波英和大辞典》，岩波书店，东
京，1971

* 出自知名作家、社会活动家的例句，仅注明其姓氏，如：
Christie, Churchill, Dickens, Dreiser, Lincoln, London, Shaw, Sinclair,
Wells, Whitman 等。

练习题参考答案

Exercise 1

I.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. 有限词类,代词 | 8. 无限词类,名词 |
| 2. 有限词类,介词 | 9. 有限词类,连词 |
| 3. 有限词类,助动词 | 10. 有限词类,关系代词 |
| 4. 无限词类,形容词 | 11. 有限词类,代词 |
| 5. 有限词类,关系代词 | 12. 无限词类,动词 |
| 6. 无限词类,副词 | 13. 有限词类,代词 |
| 7. 有限词类,冠词 | |

II.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I 人称代词, 主语 | 12. those 指示代词, 分裂句表语【去掉强调结构 It is always... who, 原句为 Those like you have to go...】 |
| 2. me 人称代词, 介词宾语 | 13. those, whereas 并列分句的主语, who accept... 定语从句的先行词 |
| 3. who 关系代词, 定语从句主语 | 14. much 指量代词, 宾语 |
| 4. it 宾语, 指 the act of giving an enormous hug | 15. my 物主代词 |
| 5. that 虚化为连词, 引导结果从句 | 16. one 个别代词 |
| 6. other 区别代词, 定语 | |
| 7. his 物主代词 | |
| 8. me, 原句 Why it is not me? 中的表语, 非正式语 | |

习惯使用宾格形式

9. him 人称代词,介词宾语
10. all 概括代词,同位语
11. it 人称代词,分裂句(特殊强调句)主语, who have to...定语从句的先行词

17. what 连接代词,名词性关系从句中的主语
18. that 虚化为连词,引导宾语从句

III.

1. Jack has a part-time job. He works at a fast-food restaurant.
2. Many monkeys don't like water, but they can swim well when they have to.
3. The teacher marked the students' papers late into the night. He returned their papers to them the next day.
4. The cormorant is a diving bird. It can stay under water for a long time.
5. Jane bought a new book. She read it the whole afternoon.
6. My family is large. It is composed of 10 members.

IV.

1. "May I come round in the morning?" "Yes, please do."
2. "Do you smoke?" "Yes, I do."
3. My secretary worked later than I did last night.
4. She was ill, but he didn't seem so.
5. He is a lazy boy and will always be so.
6. He was trying to follow her example. But he couldn't do so

Exercise 2

I.

1. 本体代词,单数
10. 本体代词,复数

2. 属性代词,性质
3. 属性代词,性质
4. 本体代词,单数
5. 本体代词,单数
6. 本体代词,单数
7. 本体代词,单数
8. 本体代词,单数
9. 属性代词,性质

11. 属性代词,性质
12. 属性代词,性质
13. 本体代词,单数
14. 本体代词,单数
15. 本体代词,单数
16. 属性代词,确定性
17. 属性代词,确定性

II.

1. they 本体代词,人称代词,主语
2. it 本体代词,人称代词,形式主语
3. this 属性代词,指示代词
4. you 本体代词,人称代词,从句主语
5. your 属性代词,物主代词
6. those 本体代词,指示代词,介词宾语
7. who 本体代词,关系代词,从句主语
8. no 属性代词,否定代词
9. one 本体代词,个别代词,主语
10. me 本体代词,人称代词,介词宾语
11. what 本体代词,疑问代词,表语

23. this 属性代词,指示代词
24. this way 状语
25. I 本体代词,人称代词,主语
26. them 本体代词,人称代词,宾语
27. myself 本体代词,反身代词,宾语
28. that 本体代词,关系代词,定语从句中宾语
29. me 本体代词,人称代词,间接宾语
30. it 本体代词,人称代词,介词宾语
31. I 本体代词,人称代词,主语
32. my 属性代词,物主代词
33. I 本体代词,人称代词,

12. that 本体代词, 指示代词, 主语
13. I 本体代词, 人称代词, 主语
14. those 本体代词, 指示代词, 主语
15. my 属性代词, 物主代词
16. each 属性代词, 个别代词
17. each day 状语
18. that 本体代词, 关系代词, 定语从句中主语
19. me 本体代词, 人称代词, 宾语
20. I 本体代词, 人称代词, 主语
21. it 本体代词, 人称代词, 宾语
22. others 本体代词, 区别代词, 介词宾语

34. that 本体代词, 关系代词, 定语从句中宾语
35. I 本体代词, 人称代词, 主语
36. them 本体代词, 介词宾语
37. you 本体代词, 人称代词, 主语
38. that 虚化为连词, 引导宾语从句
39. it 本体代词, 人称代词, 宾语
40. I 本体代词, 人称代词, 主语
41. every 属性代词, 个别代词

III.

1. After tasting the soup, Smith added a little salt to it.
2. Let me give you a little advice. You can borrow money from the bank.
3. Most of her arguments were founded on fact.
4. As I was just getting familiar with this job, I had much to ask my boss.
5. Some of the capital cities I would like to visit are London and

Paris.

6. How is everything, Martin?
7. He had never envied the rich their luxurious pleasures.

IV.

1. Both his parents are still alive.
2. Half the apples are not ripe.
3. Every few days there seemed to be another setback.
4. John makes quite a noise.
5. No one can be blamed for the many mistakes.

Exercise 3

I.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 宾格 me/him 等 | 5. 主格 she/he 等 |
| 2. 主格 she/he 等 | 6. 主格 she/he 或宾格 her/him 等 |
| 3. 主格 she/he 等 | 7. 宾格 me/him 等 |
| 4. 宾格 me/him 等 | |

II.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. her | 4. his/his or her |
| 2. his | 5. he/he or she |
| 3. him/him or her | |

III.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| 1. he | 5. one's |
| 2. who(从句主语) | 6. its, its |
| 3. her | 7. his/his or her/their |
| 4. whom | |

IV.

1. 指前面提到的事物(dictionary)

2. 指前面提到的动物(bird)
3. 指天色
4. 用于分裂句
5. 形式主语(真正主语为 that 从句)
6. 形式主语(真正主语为不定式短语)

Exercise 4

I.

1. I only need one shirt, not two.
2. Tom and herself are conducting an experiment together.
3. You should avail yourself of the books in the library.
4. Jane and Mary carried a small device with them.
5. My sister and myself/I will go to a party tomorrow.

II.

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. himself, 回指 | 5. herself, 强调 |
| 2. myself, 强调 | 6. myself, 强调 |
| 3. themselves, 强调 | 7. himself, 强调 |
| 4. ourselves, 回指 | |

III.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. 确切数量“一” | 4. 泛指任何人 |
| 2. 不确定的一天 | 5. 某一位 |
| 3. 某些人中的一个 | 6. 不确定的一天 |

IV.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. anyone, himself | 5. None |
| 2. Any one | 6. No one |
| 3. anybody | 7. none |
| 4. nobody | 8. their (如果用 everybody) |

则有男有女)

Exercise 5

I.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Those | 5. this |
| 2. That | 6. That |
| 3. this | 7. Those |
| 4. these | |

II.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. my, theirs | 5. My, my, my |
| 2. our, ours, her | 6. your, their |
| 3. his | 7. my, theirs, theirs, mine,
their |
| 4. her, our | 8. her, hers, Her, his |

III.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. This | 5. That (40 pounds 一个金
额) |
| 2. that man | 6. these |
| 3. this | 7. that |
| 4. This (woods 视为一片树
林) | |

IV.

1. 指上文 Our car broke down on the way to the airport.
2. 指上文 I was not a good wife.
3. 指下文 Has this Mrs. Jones been here the whole morning?
4. 指上文 We see him when he comes to town.

V.

1. This daughter of mine wrote to say she was coming from Paris

- today.
2. That car of yours is always breaking down.
 3. That brother of yours was drunk again last night.
 4. Neither of us likes those works of hers.
 5. Look at those dirty hands of yours.

Exercise 6

I.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. each 2. something 3. her 人称代词宾格 4. all 5. her 物主代词 6. each 7. other 8. them 9. that 强调时用可有感情色彩,指 terrace 旁的花 10. it(不再重复 that)前指 11. that 关系代词 12. it(与前一 it 同属前指,指 bunch 花束) 13. We 14. we(或 I) 15. it(前指,指 David 的塑像) 16. who 关系代词 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 17. That 或 It(前指,指 Helen 所述) 18. it 前指 19. That(指前述“摸塑像”) 20. her 人称代词宾格 21. her 物主代词 22. they 23. she 24. us 25. us 26. it 前指,指 the sea 27. something 28. her 物主代词 29. all 30. no 31. it(前指,指 her face) |
|--|--|

II.

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| 1. every | 4. each/every |
| 2. all | 5. each |
| 3. every | |

III.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. such as | 4. the same |
| 2. such as | 5. Every one |
| 3. such that | |

IV.

1. In the early morning the first thing that my brother and I did was to go out to see the pony.
2. It is required by law that a husband have to pay the debts of his wife until formal notice is given that he no longer has to pay **them**.
3. Each cigarette which a person smokes does some harm, and eventually **he** may get a serious disease from its effect.
4. Among pure pharmaceuticals, the earliest to be isolated from natural sources were the alkaloids.

Exercise 7

I.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 1. who | 11. whose |
| 2. which(表性质、类属) | 12. what |
| 3. who | 13. what |
| 4. what | 14. whomever |
| 5. which | 15. whose |
| 6. which | 16. which |

7. which
8. that
9. who
10. whom

17. what/which
18. whichever/which
19. what

II.

1. that/which
2. that/who/whom
3. that
4. that

5. that/who
6. that(构成 all that there is 句型)

III.

1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C

IV.

1. Who ever has been in the room while I was out?
2. Whoever may come, tell them I'm busy.
3. Which vase do you think is more beautiful?
4. He is a man whose word you can rely on.
5. Everything that we saw was of great interest.

Exercise 8

I.

1. We don't have any books.
2. Smith is not an architect at all.
3. I'm not any wiser at all now.
4. He will not meet us anywhere.
5. Not a single man can be seen in the street.

II.

1. 我们没有看到该校所有的东西。
2. 两本书他们还没都读。
3. 这种植物不是什么地方都能见到。
4. 并非所有这些书都有趣。
5. 机会人人都有,但它们到来时,并非人人都作好了准备。

III.

1. I don't like the film either. / I, too, don't like the film.
2. He is no more wise than brave.
3. Neither John nor Jack is willing to go.
4. What they like is not sports, but music.
5. I finished washing the clothes in no time.

IV.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. same | 15. no |
| 2. You | 16. her |
| 3. her | 17. she |
| 4. she | 18. everyone |
| 5. her | 19. same |
| 6. that | 20. she |
| 7. her | 21. all |
| 8. that | 22. any |
| 9. other | 23. what |
| 10. that | 24. her |
| 11. everything | 25. her |
| 12. her | 26. it |
| 13. her | 27. her |
| 14. her | 28. her |

Exercise 9

I.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. some/any; some moment
表示某一个时间, any
moment 表示任何时候 | 6. anything |
| 2. anybody | 7. anybody |
| 3. any | 8. any |
| 4. some | 9. some |
| 5. some | 10. some/any; 用 some 表示
较强的肯定意向, 认为
“屋里有电话” |

II.

1. Yes, I have a lot of/a great many/plenty of friends here. No, I don't have many friends here.
2. Yes, it gave me a lot of/a great deal of/plenty of pleasure. No, it didn't give me much pleasure.
3. Yes, I spent a lot of/a great deal of/plenty of time in studying English. No, I didn't spend much time in studying English.
4. Yes, a lot of/a great many/plenty of people have been to see me. No, not many people have been to see me.
5. Yes, they have to change trains a lot of/a great many times. No, they don't have to change trains many times.
6. Yes, she wrote me a lot of/a great many/plenty of letters. No, she didn't write me many letters.

III.

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. some | 5. any, any |
| 2. ever | 6. anyone |
| 3. any | 7. any |

	4. any		8. ever
IV.			
	1. already		3. still
	2. ever		4. yet
V.			
	1. those		16. any
	2. that		17. all
	3. them		18. me
	4. their		19. every
	5. them		20. Every
	6. every		21. what
	7. same		22. Everything
	8. them		23. anything
	9. they		24. their
	10. them		25. their
	11. They		26. it
	12. that		27. them
	13. that		28. they
	14. many		29. it
	15. little		

Exercise 10

I.

1. 替代词; those = the apples
2. 替代词; that = the bridge
3. 替代词; one = translation
4. 不定代词; one 泛指任何人

5. 替代词; ones = violets

II.

1. The schoolboys I saw skating were much younger than **those/ the ones/ the one** you were playing with.
2. No bread eaten by man is so sweet as **that** earned by his own labor.
3. No one, at any rate no English writer, has written better about the childhood life than **did** Dickens.
4. As inevitably as human culture has changed with the passing of time, so **has** the environment.
5. "Everything in the store is expensive." "**So it is.**"

III.

1. do the same = write you and let you know how things are
2. so = they enjoyed every minute of it
3. so = Shakespeare was born in 1564
4. do = follow her example

IV.

1. A

2. D

3. A

4. A

5. A

6. A

[General Information]

书名=通用英语代词、替代词教程

作者=张轶前主编 贾珍霞 单亦桢 曹润宇 刘国善
编

页数=241

SS号=11407075

出版日期=2005年03月第1版

前言

目录

第一章 代词与各类静词的关系

- 1.1 英语词类与信号词汇的不同抽象化程度
- 1.2 有限词类的词数很少，用得很多
- 1.3 替代词so是形容词、副词的进一步抽象化
- 1.4 替代词do (so) 是动词的进一步抽象化
- 1.5 代词和替代词可避免语句中的重复
- 1.6 代词所指不明确时可产生歧义

Exercise 1

第二章 本体代词与属性代词的类别

- 2.1 本体代词有“格”的语法范畴
- 2.2 本体代词多有数，有的有性
- 2.3 大部分本体代词不能用作定语表属性
- 2.4 属性代词按表示“性质”、“数量”、“确定性”等关系分类
- 2.5 除every, no之外，属性代词都可单用而指事物本体
- 2.6 属性代词为前位限定词，不同于形容词
- 2.7 属性代词指本体不尽同于形容词名词化

Exercise 2

第三章 代词的性、数、格

- 3.1 人称代词性、数、人称及格的呼应
- 3.2 it的多种功能
- 3.3 人称代词的泛指用法
- 3.4 性偏见：用he/him/his兼指两性
- 3.5 拟人化代词的“性”
- 3.6 宾格形式顶替主格形式
- 3.7 主格形式顶替宾格形式
- 3.8 's所有格用于指生物的名词与代词

3.9 's所有格用于交通工具等

3.10 's所有格用于处所、空间量、时间量、
金额及其他度量

Exercise 3

第四章 本体代词惯用法

4.1 用作宾语、介词宾语的反身代词

4.2 用于强调主语的反身代词

4.3 self/selves单独使用

4.4 one原数词兼任代词

4.5 one与someone/somebody及some one

4.6 anyone/anybody与any one

4.7 no one/nobody与none

4.8 none指可数或不可数事物

4.9 none兼任副词

4.10 each other与one another的异同

4.11 分隔开的each (one) ... other (another)

Exercise 4

第五章 表空间、时间关系与所属关系的代词

5.1 指示代词指单数和复数

5.2 空间上的远指与近指

5.3 时间上的远指与近指

5.4 语句中的前指与后指

5.5 that构成的惯用语

5.6 物主代词的附加形式与绝对形式

5.7 强调物主代词own

5.8 物主代词 / sb' s与of短语所表的几种关系

5.9 双重所有关系of sb' s / 物主代词mine等 (my own等)

Exercise 5

第六章 表数量与确定 / 不确定关系的代词

- 6.1 many/much与a good number/a great deal of, a lot of, plenty of等
- 6.2 more/most作代词
- 6.3 much兼作副词
- 6.4 more, most兼作副词
- 6.5 each与every的比较
- 6.6 each与everyone/everybody及every one的比较
- 6.7 such与as, that连用
- 6.8 the same as与the same that之异同
- 6.9 some指可数与不可数事物
- 6.10 一些非确指代词在句中“数”的呼应
- 6.11 either, neither, none在句中“数”的一致
- 6.12 冠词与属性代词的词序

Exercise 6

- ### 第七章 疑问代词 / 副词, 关系代词 / 副词, 连接代词 / 副词
- 7.1 名词性问题从句与名词性关系从句
 - 7.2 what保留或失去疑问意义引导不同的名词从句
 - 7.3 who在现代英语中不引导名词性关系从句
 - 7.4 whatever, whoever和which(ever)引导的问题从句与名词性关系从句
 - 7.5 which作关系代词与that的比较
 - 7.6 who作关系代词与that比较
 - 7.7 关系代词which与whose的比较
 - 7.8 关系代词whose与of which的比较
 - 7.9 关系代词的省略
 - 7.10 “介词+关系代词”或that有时可代替关系副词when/where/why

7.11 关系代词as与whi ch i s比较

7.12 when, wher e, how, why引导问题从句与关系从句

Exerci se 7

第八章 否定所指和否定范围

8.1 ei ther (由代词转作否定副词)与al so/ too用于否定句

8.2 no与not及not any 的比较

8.3 no m ore...than/not...any m ore than与not m ore...than

8.4 nei ther由代词转作否定副词与nor用作否定连词

8.5 部分否定

8.6 局部否定(局限否定)

8.7 在有“局部否定”的句子中可用肯定词语

8.8 规范英语和非规范英语中的双重否定

Exerci se 8

第九章 肯定、非肯定词语和肯定意向

9.1 肯定句中用肯定词语some等

9.2 表疑问 / 否定 / 条件等非肯定句中用非肯定词语any等

9.3 非肯定词语和含蓄否定副词sel dom, hardl y, littl e等连用

9.4 非肯定词语代词any, 其复合代词以及ever, yet等用于各种非肯定上下文

9.5 肯定词语、非肯定词语和否定词语的对照

9.6 同一句中用两个以上非肯定词语

9.7 表示质问或反驳的否定句中用肯定词语

9.8 在含“肯定意向”的疑问句和条件句中用肯定词语

Exercise 9

第十章 替代词

10.1 one作为替代词

10.2 that, those作为替代词

10.3 some, none等作为替代词

10.4 the same作为替代词

10.5 do作为替代词

10.6 do so, do it, do that

10.7 so替代上文中的表语或定语

10.8 “so+do（或助动词 / 情态动词）+主语”
与 “so+主语+do（或助动词 / 情态动词）”

10.9 so和not替代上述从句

Exercise 10

例句出处略语表（主要参考书目）

练习题参考答案